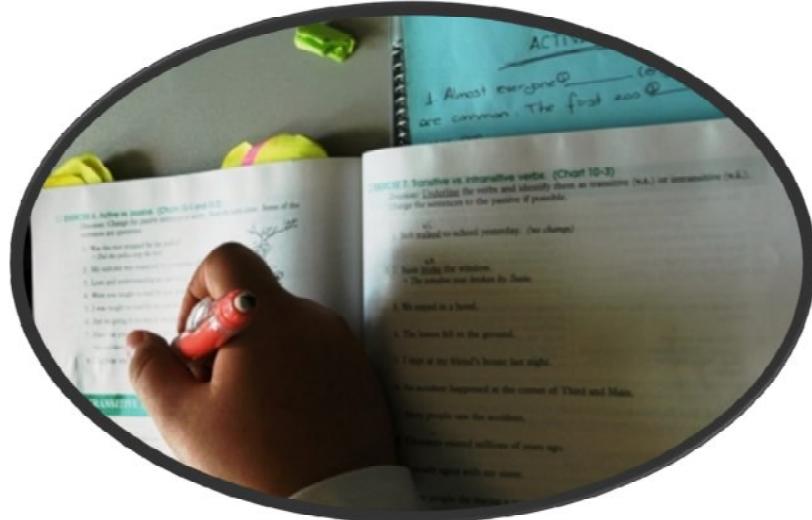


# GRAMMAR

COPY & Learn



"We learn by doing."

**Cover design by mag**

**Compiled by Maġpak**

**2012**

1960 yılında Rahmetli Prof. Dr. Mehmet Kaplan tarafından o zamanki talebesi Prof. Dr. Orhan Okay'a yazdığı mektupta dil ve hayat ile ilgili tecrübelerini şu şekilde anlatır:

Orhan,

...  
Acaba Hoca, Londra'da bu kadar ne ile meşgul derseniz, cevabı basit: İngilizce ile. Geldiğim ilk hafta şehri epeyce dolaştım. Caddeleri, müzeleri gördüm. "Ha, Londra dedikleri buymuş!" diyerek odaya kapandım. Haftada üç gün sabahları evde hususi ders alıyoruz. Öğleden sonraları, vazife yapıyorum, İngilizce plak dinliyor veya kopya ediyorum. Gece yine aynı işe devam. Neredeyse, buraya geleli iki ay olacak, günler hep böyle geçti. Bir hayli istifade ettim sanıyorum. Meşhur sair ye münekkit T.S.Eliot'ın tenkitlerini kopya ediyorum. Alain'den öğrendiğim bu usul son derece faydalı. Fakültede Osmanlıcayı da kopya ederek öğretmiyor muyuz? Sizin de yabancı dil öğrenmek için her gün beş-altı sayfa kopya etmeniz faydalı olur. Bu suretle dikkat, kelime ve cümlenin teferruatına bağlanıyor, insan dalga geçmiyor. Prensiplerimden biri, bir gün dahi ihmali etmemek. Bunu size de hep tavsiye ederim ama tatbik etmezsiniz. Her gün üç dört sayfa kopya ve tercüme, bir sene sonra bu iş tamam.

**YAZMAK...**

Yine Alain'de okumuştum, Stendhal genç iken söyle bir prensip kabul etmis. "Her gün bir sayfa yazı, ya dahi olacağım, ya hiç!" Avrupa'da en titiz yazarlar, ömürleri boyunca yirmi-otuz kitap yazarlar. Sebebi, bir gün atlatmadan her gün sabahтан ögleye kadar yazarlar. Biz ilham geldikçe okur veya yazarız. Bu itiyadi evvela sizin kazanmanız, sonra talebenize aşılamanız çok iyi olur.

**GEVEZELİĞİMİZ**

Misafirlik, gevezelik bundan dolayı bana boş gelir. Bir fikir üzerinde insicamla, sürekli konuşma ne ise. Fakat dağınık konuşma, gevezelik insana hiçbir şey kazandırmaz. Bizim öğreneceğimiz o kadar çok şey var ki. Bu yaşta kendimi talebe gibi hissediyorum. Neler bilmiyorum. Biz muhakkak ki çok vakit harcayan bir milletiz. Sefalet ve dalaletimizin sebebi bu; Burada boş oturan veya gezen adama rastlamak hemen hemen imkânsız. Herkes içinde, gücünde.

**DEĞİŞMEYEN HALİMİZ**

Bütün T... bir kahvehane gibi. Boyuna gevezelik, dedikodu. Sizden aldığım mektuplarda, hadiseler dolayısıyla, biraz bedbinleştiğinizi hissettim ve üzüldüm. Alan'ın en mühim nasihatlerinden biri kendini bedbinliğe kaptırmamaktır. Felsefi bakımdan bedbin olmak temelsiz bir fikirdir. Hayat, durmadan değişir, bir. Bir de hayatı, hayatımızı değiştirmek büyük nispette elimizdedir. Gelecek hakkında hiçbir faraziyede bulunmadan günlük vazifesini yapmak, iste ilerlemenin yolu. Ben hayatında bir sene ilerisini göremedim, sizde istikbalı keşfetmek hassası varsa, onu bilmem. Altı ay, hatta üç ay sonra ne olacağını önceden kestiremezsiniz.

**HERGÜN YENİDEN DOĞMAK**

Her günü faydalı geçirmeye bakın, yarının ne olacağını düşünmeyin. "Her gün derdi kendisine yeter" diye bir söz vardır. "Her gün işi kendisine yeter" deyin. Yunus "Her gün yeni doğarız" demiyor mu? Orada benim güvendiğim arkadaşların ben gittikten sonra davranışlarının değiştigini yazıyzorsunuz. Bu beni ne hayrete düşürdü, ne de müteessir etti. Her biri hakkında izhar etmediğim kanaatlerim vardı. Ölçülerini biliyorum. Onlara faydalı olmaya ve onları faydalı yapmaya çalıştım. Bize düşen iyilik yapmaktır, nasıl karşılanırsa karşılansın. Sahici adam bulmak öyle kolay değildir. Fakat bu bizim iyi davranışımıza mani değildir. Sonra başka bir şey var: Biz iyi davranışsak, karşımızdakinin de iyi olması, hiç olmazsa bir müddet için, çok mümkündür. Ben orada bulduğum müddetçe, bir dostluk havası kurmayı arzu ettim. Pek az insanı kötü buldum. Kusur herkeste vardır. Benim affedemediğim şey kusur değil, alçaklıktır. Orada gerçekten alçak ruhlu bir iki insan tanıdım ki, bu kadar kalabalığın içinde elbet o kadar da bulunur.

**İLMİ ÇALIŞMALAR NASIL OLMALIDIR?**

Sizin çalışmalarınız beni çok yakından alakadar ediyor. Yabancı dil, kültürünüzü genişlemesi, tezleriniz. Başta ilk ikisi. **Tezlerinizin mükemmeliyeti yabancı dil ile okuduğunuz kitapların sayısına bağlıdır.** Biraz gecikmekte, eğer zaman iyi doldurmuş iseniz hiçbir mahzur yoktur. Yabancı dilde beş on kitap okumadan doktora yapmanızı istemiyorum. Bir defa bu merhaleyi asmak lazımdır. **Hepiniz için Garplı Kültürü şart. Bu da Garplı ilmi eserleri ve dergileri okumakla olur.** **Araştırmada malzemeden çok, görüş mühimdir.** Görüş ise, değerli araştırmaları okumakla elde edilir. İçinizde en kötü durumda olan Birol'dur. 24 saat dersi var. Şahsi mesai için pek az vakti kalmıyor. Fakat o, sınıf derslerini hem kendisi hem çocukların için enteresan yapabilir. **İnsan, mesele haline getirirse, en basit şeylerden, isimlerden, sıfatlardan da derin fikirler çıkarabilir.** Bütün mesele, dikkatini bir mevzû üzerinde derinleştirmektir. Ona karşı uyanmaktadır. Bu ortaokulda da mümkündür. Askerliğimi Konya Askeri Ortaokulu'nda yaparken denedim, en basit metinlerde, muhteva, sekil, üslup, hayat görüşü ve dilin mekanizmalarını arayınca pek çok şeyler buldum. Hepiniz sınıf derslerini enteresan hale getirebilirsiniz. Canınız sıkılmaz. Karşısına çıkan mevzular üzerinde kafasını işletmek, meseleler bulmakta bir sinek dahi mühimdir. Yine Yunus ne güzel söylemiştir: "Benim bir karıncaya ulu nazarım vardır". Küçük şeylere, isimlere, sıfatlara, basmakalıp sözlere "ulu nazar ile bakmak. " Bu nevi günlük dikkatler, kesifler sizi ilmi çalışmaya hazırlar.

Kendinizi serbest düşünen bir insan gibi hissetmelisiniz. Mehmet, Kerem ile Aslı veya Aşık Garib'i mevzu olarak düşünüyordu. Bence hepsi olur. Yukarıda da dediğim gibi konunun değil, bakışım, ele alışın ehemmiyeti vardır. Yeni Türk edebiyatı için de aynı **şey** bahis mevzuu.

.....

#### **DERİNLEŞME**

Mevzuu değiştirebilirsin. **Fakat benim şahsen ehemmiyet verdiğim araştırma tarzı, ele alış, derinleşmedir.** Bu da bol kitap okumak ve şahsi düşünmekle olur. Hepiniz için arzu ettiğim şey her gün çalışmanın, okumanın, düşünmenin ve ıstıraklı da olsa yaşamın zevkini almanızdır. **Can sıkıntısı, ruhun aydın olmayışına delalet eder. Gün ışığı, yağmur, kar, bir insan çehresi size neşe verebilmeli.** ..... Hepinize güvenim var. Muntazam çalışırsanız, üniversitede yeni bir nesil teşkil edeceksiniz. **Haftada, bir gün buluşun; diğer günler vakit kaybetmeyin. Etrafınızda ne olduğuna da pek aldırmayın.**

Şimdi size düşen iş, konuşmak ve münakasa etmek değil, çalışmak, çalışmak, çalışmaktadır. Ancak çalışmalarımızla memlekete faydalı olabiliriz. Orada kütüphanede bulunan kitapları muntazaman tarayınız. Hepsinde sizi alakadar eden bir şeyler bulabilirsiniz. Bol not alın, bunları kaybetseniz de faydanız hali değildir. Talebenin veya rektörün, bana karşı olan duygularını size çevirmeleri beni müteessir eder. Buna mani olmak için yapacağınız şey, son derece ihtiyatlı olmak, gevezelik etmemek, ilmi çerçeveye içinde kalmaktır. Benim fikir veya hareketlerimi müdafaa etmenizi dahi istemem. Ben ancak siz orada çalışır, yerleşir, orayı sever, bir ilim adamı olursanız sevinirim. Benim oraya dönmem mümkün olduğu gün doneceğim. Fakat hiçbir suretle gürültü, patırtı çıkarmak istemiyorum. **Teşvik ve tahrik çok kolay bir şey.** Orada sakin olmak, hareketli olmaktan daha mühimdir. Hele sizlerin doçent olmadan sesinizi çıkarmamız katılen doğru olmaz. Mehmet ve Birol heyecanlı tiplerdir. Bu nasihaterim bilhassa onlardır. **Mümkün ise de, gazete okumasanız ne iyi olur.** Bu o kadar rahat bir şey ki. Günlüğünne dismda daimi olan kıymetler, hayatınıza esas olmalıdır.

.....

**Prof. Dr. Mehmet Kaplan, 8 Nisan 1960 , Londra**

Not: Ara başlıklar tarafımızca atılmıştır.

## Kitap Hakkında

Bu kitap, klasik boşluk doldurma metodunu bir kenara bırakarak, birebir kopya etme üzerine bina edilmiştir. Daha önce İngilizce kursu almış fakat bazı konuları pekiştirememiş veya yazma hususunda sıkıntısı olanlar için de bu çalışmanın faydalı olacağını düşünüyoruz. Şayet bir kursa gitmiyorsanız, kendi başına günde onbeş-yirmi dakika bir çalışmaya mesafe alabilirsiniz. Ama ideal olan süre bir saatdir.

Dil öğrenmede gramer çalışması tek başına yeterli olmayacağından, kısa hikaye kitapları, romanlar veya günlük gazeteler okumak suretiyle öğrendiklerimizi geliştirmeliyiz. Şayet yoğun bir iş hayatımız varsa, günde onbeş dakika okumaya mutlaka vakit ayrılmalıyız.

Dil öğrenme hususunda birçok insanın denediği çeşitli yol ve metodlar vardır. Ama işin özü vakit ayırip çalışmaktır. İyi çalışmalar.

# Grammar Vocabulary – Parts of Speech

## -Kelimelerin Görevleri-

**noun** – a word for a person, animal, thing, place, idea. **[ɪsɪm]**  
*bird, house, sky, friendship, week, Susan, party, space, fun, Australia*

**verb** – a word that describes an action (doing something). [verb]  
*go, get, take, turn, fall, invent, fly, know, be, have, thank, think, stop, forget, will, won't, do, didn't, understand*

**adjective** – a word that describes a noun. They come before the noun. [sifat]  
*big, old, happy, friendly, slow, red, fun, funny, stupid, itchy*

**adverb** - a word that describes a verb or adjective. It tells you how something is done, or, when or where something happened. They come before the verb or adjective. [zarf]  
*quickly, slowly, fast, outside, inside, up, down, today, when*

**preposition** – a word that describes place of a noun. They come before the noun. [edat] over, under, up, to, of, from, in, out, on top of, between, through, at

**pronoun** – a word that replaces a noun in a sentence. [zamir]  
*I, me, they, it, them, those, these, what, who, that*

**phrasal verb** – a verb made from two words. [filli deyim]  
*stand up, fall over, shut up, turn off, turn on, turn up, turn down*

**possessive adjective** – a word that goes before a noun and shows who owns something. (iyelik sıfatı)  
*my, your, our, its, their, his, her*

**singular** – only one (of a noun) [tekil]  
*car, bird, match, party, disco, photo, box, child, wife, foot, tooth, mouse, deer, person, sheep, kebab*

**plural** – more than one (of a noun) [cogul]

*cars, birds, matches, parties, discs, photos, boxes, children, wives, feet, teeth, mice, deer, people, sheep, kebabs*

**mass noun** – a noun you cannot count (it has no plural). [sayılamayan/kütle isim]

*cheese, rain, hair, love, football, mathematics, coffee, water, oil, tea, wood, paper, knowledge*

**conjunction** – a word that joins two words, phrases or sentences together. [bağlaç]

but, so, and, because, or

# SUBJECT PRONOUNS

## SUBJECT PRONOUNS - HE, SHE, IT, WE, THEY

Fill in the blanks using "HE, SHE, IT, WE, THEY":

Example: Ann and Kate      THEY

|                   |       |                      |       |
|-------------------|-------|----------------------|-------|
| 1. bicycle        | _____ | 19. news             | _____ |
| 2. books          | _____ | 20. Pamela           | _____ |
| 3. brother-in-law | _____ | 21. papers           | _____ |
| 4. buses          | _____ | 22. parents          | _____ |
| 5. cat and horse  | _____ | 23. piano            | _____ |
| 6. cheese         | _____ | 24. picture          | _____ |
| 7. children       | _____ | 25. plane            | _____ |
| 8. daughter       | _____ | 26. school           | _____ |
| 9. dolphin        | _____ | 27. scissors         | _____ |
| 10. feet          | _____ | 28. shop             | _____ |
| 11. flowers       | _____ | 29. sister           | _____ |
| 12. friendship    | _____ | 30. sky              | _____ |
| 13. geese         | _____ | 31. son              | _____ |
| 14. Jack and I    | _____ | 32. sugar            | _____ |
| 15. Mary          | _____ | 33. sunshine         | _____ |
| 16. mice          | _____ | 34. The Riggs family | _____ |
| 17. milk          | _____ | 35. You and Dave     | _____ |
| 18. Mr. Green     | _____ |                      |       |

# SINGULAR - PLURAL

## PLURAL NOUN

| SINGULAR  | PLURAL  |   |
|---|---|---|
| (a) <i>one pen</i><br><i>one apple</i><br><i>one cup</i><br><i>one elephant</i> | <i>two pens</i><br><i>three apples</i><br><i>four cups</i><br><i>five elephants</i> | To make the plural form of most nouns: add <b>-s</b> .  |
| (b) <i>baby</i><br><i>city</i>  | <i>babies</i><br><i>cities</i>  | End of noun: <i>consonant + -y</i><br>Plural form: change <b>y</b> to <b>i</b> , add <b>-es</b> .                                     |
| (c) <i>boy</i><br><i>key</i>  | <i>boys</i><br><i>keys</i>  | End of noun: <i>vowel + -y</i><br>Plural form: add <b>-s</b> .  |
| (d) <i>wife</i><br><i>thief</i>   | <i>wives</i><br><i>thieves</i>  | End of noun: <i>-fe</i> or <i>-f</i><br>Plural form: change <b>f</b> to <b>v</b> , add <b>-es</b> .                                   |
| (e) <i>dish</i><br><i>match</i><br><i>class</i><br><i>box</i>                   | <i>dishes</i><br><i>matches</i><br><i>classes</i><br><i>boxes</i>                   | End of noun: <i>-sh, -ch, -ss, -x</i><br>Plural form: add <b>-es</b> .<br>Pronunciation: /əz/   |
| (f) <i>tomato</i><br><i>potato</i><br><i>zoo</i><br><i>radio</i>                | <i>tomatoes</i><br><i>potatoes</i><br><i>zoos</i><br><i>radios</i>                  | End of noun: <i>consonant + -o</i><br>Plural form: add <b>-es</b> .<br>End of noun: <i>vowel + -o</i><br>Plural form: add <b>-s</b> . |

# PLURAL NOUN

Write the plural as in the example:

Example: boy boys

|                |       |               |       |
|----------------|-------|---------------|-------|
| 1. actor       | _____ | 29. lady      | _____ |
| 2. address     | _____ | 30. lawyer    | _____ |
| 3. baby        | _____ | 31. leaf      | _____ |
| 4. bike        | _____ | 32. lemon     | _____ |
| 5. blackboard  | _____ | 33. man       | _____ |
| 6. boat        | _____ | 34. machine   | _____ |
| 7. book        | _____ | 35. mouse     | _____ |
| 8. friend      | _____ | 36. name      | _____ |
| 9. brush       | _____ | 37. notebook  | _____ |
| 10. butterfly  | _____ | 38. party     | _____ |
| 11. car        | _____ | 39. pen       | _____ |
| 12. child      | _____ | 40. person    | _____ |
| 13. city       | _____ | 41. piano     | _____ |
| 14. city       | _____ | 42. room      | _____ |
| 15. country    | _____ | 43. roommate  | _____ |
| 16. cry        | _____ | 44. secretary | _____ |
| 17. dancer     | _____ | 45. signal    | _____ |
| 18. desk       | _____ | 46. singer    | _____ |
| 19. diamond    | _____ | 47. sister    | _____ |
| 20. family     | _____ | 48. sport     | _____ |
| 21. flower     | _____ | 49. table     | _____ |
| 22. fly        | _____ | 50. tooth     | _____ |
| 23. foot       | _____ | 51. umbrella  | _____ |
| 24. fox        | _____ | 52. video     | _____ |
| 25. holiday    | _____ | 53. watch     | _____ |
| 26. journalist | _____ | 54. week      | _____ |
| 27. judge      | _____ | 55. wife      | _____ |
| 28. knife      | _____ | 56. woman     | _____ |

# A-AN

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(a) <b>A</b> dog is <b>an</b> animal.</p>   | <p><b>A</b> and <b>an</b> are used in front of singular count nouns.<br/>In (a): <i>dog</i> and <i>animal</i> are singular count nouns.</p>   |
| <p>(b) I work in <b>an</b> office.<br/><br/>(c) Mr. Lee is <b>an</b> old man.</p>  | <p>Use <b>an</b> in front of words that begin with the vowels <b>a, e, i, and o</b>: <i>an apartment, an elephant, an idea, an ocean</i>.<br/>In (c): Notice that <b>an</b> is used because the adjective (<i>old</i>) begins with a vowel and comes in front of a singular count noun (<i>man</i>).</p>  |
| <p>(d) I have <b>an</b> uncle.<br/>COMPARE:<br/>(e) He works at <b>a</b> university.</p>                                       | <p>Use <b>an</b> if a word that begins with “<i>u</i>” has a vowel sound: <i>an uncle, an ugly picture</i>.<br/>Use <b>a</b> if a word that begins with “<i>u</i>” has a /yu/ sound: <i>a university, a usual event</i>.</p>  |
| <p>(f) I need <b>an</b> hour to finish my work.<br/>COMPARE:<br/>(g) I live in <b>a</b> house. He lives in <b>a</b> hotel.</p> | <p>In some words that begin with “<i>h</i>,” the “<i>h</i>” is not pronounced. Instead, the word begins with a vowel sound and <b>an</b> is used: <i>an hour, an honor</i>.<br/>In most words that begin with “<i>h</i>,” the “<i>h</i>” is pronounced. Use <b>a</b> if the “<i>h</i>” is pronounced.</p> |

## Fill in the blanks with A, An, or (Nothing)

|                 |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. _animal      | 15. _Hawaii           |
| 2. _ant         | 16. _insect           |
| 3. _apple       | 17. _milk             |
| 4. _apple pie   | 18. _movie            |
| 5. _ball        | 19. _Pacific Ocean    |
| 6. _bank        | 20. _pizza            |
| 7. _bread       | 21. _river            |
| 8. _bulldog     | 22. _smartest people  |
| 9. _city museum | 23. _tigers           |
| 10. _dictionary | 24. _umbrella         |
| 11. _doctor     | 25. _umbrella         |
| 12. _dolphin    | 26. _year             |
| 13. _famous     | 27. _yesterday's test |
| 14. _glass      |                       |

# TO BE PRESENT

## TO BE PRESENT am – is - are

|            |         |   |     |   |                |  |
|------------|---------|---|-----|---|----------------|--|
| <b>AM</b>  | PRONOUN | + | BE  | → | CONTRACTION    |  |
|            | I       | + | am  | → | <b>I'm</b>     | (a) <b>I'm</b> a student.                                  |
| <b>IS</b>  | she     | + | is  | → | <b>she's</b>   | (b) <b>She's</b> a student.                                |
|            | he      | + | is  | → | <b>he's</b>    | (c) <b>He's</b> a student.                                 |
|            | it      | + | is  | → | <b>it's</b>    | (d) <b>It's</b> a city.                                    |
| <b>ARE</b> | you     | + | are | → | <b>you're</b>  | (e) <b>You're</b> a student.                               |
|            | we      | + | are | → | <b>we're</b>   | <b>You're</b> students.                                    |
|            | they    | + | are | → | <b>they're</b> | (f) <b>We're</b> students.<br>(g) <b>They're</b> students. |

When people speak, they often push two words together. *A contraction* = two words that are pushed together.

Contractions of a *subject pronoun* + **be** are used in both speaking and writing.

PUNCTUATION: The mark in the middle of a contraction is called an “apostrophe” (').

Fill in the blanks using “am, is, are”:

Example: Arbil \_\_ near Kirkuk. Arbil is near Kirkuk.

1. A bee \_\_ a big insect. \_\_\_\_\_
2. They \_\_ from Italy. \_\_\_\_\_
3. We \_\_ friends. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Cows \_\_ mammals. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Duhok \_\_ a city. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Fountain \_\_ a magazine. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He \_\_ a postman. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I \_\_ happy. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I \_\_ hungry. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Istanbul \_\_ a big city. \_\_\_\_\_
11. It \_\_ an onion. \_\_\_\_\_
12. It \_\_ nine o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Raida and I \_\_ student. \_\_\_\_\_
14. It \_\_ a fast car. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Jasmine \_\_ a student. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Manhattan \_\_ an island. \_\_\_\_\_
17. Mr. Richards's \_\_ a lawyer. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Muhammed \_\_ 20 years old. \_\_\_\_\_
19. My father \_\_ a fat man. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Ahmed and Omar \_\_ brothers. \_\_\_\_\_
21. I \_\_ a professional football player. \_\_\_\_\_
22. The birds \_\_ on the tree. \_\_\_\_\_
23. My father and my mother \_\_ doctors. \_\_\_\_\_
24. I know you. You \_\_ in my class. \_\_\_\_\_

# TO BE PRESENT - ISN'T, AREN'T

|   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) Tom <b>[is not]</b> a teacher. He is a student. | <b>Not</b> makes a sentence negative.  |
| (b) Tom and Ann <b>[are not]</b> teachers.          | <b>Not</b> can be contracted with <b>is</b> and <b>are</b> :<br>CONTRACTION: <b>is + not = isn't</b><br>CONTRACTION: <b>are + not = aren't</b> |
| (c) I <b>am not</b> a teacher.                      | <b>Am</b> and <b>not</b> are not contracted.   |

Fill in the blanks with **is**, **isn't**, **are** or **aren't**.

Example: Tim **is** a mechanic. He **isn't** a hairdresser.

1. Mary \_\_ a doctor. She \_\_ a student.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. John \_\_ a student. He \_\_ a doctor.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Mary \_\_ from New England. She \_\_ from London.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. He \_\_ a student. He \_\_ a student

\_\_\_\_\_

5. I \_\_ 50. I \_\_ 35.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. She \_\_ my cousin. She \_\_ my sister.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. They \_\_ his parents. They \_\_ her parents.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. We \_\_ students. We \_\_ teachers.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. You \_\_ a journalist. You \_\_ a policeman.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. He \_\_ from France. He \_\_ from England.

\_\_\_\_\_

11. They're shop assistants. They're doctors.

\_\_\_\_\_

12. Susan and Kim \_\_ nurses. They \_\_ teachers.

\_\_\_\_\_

# TO BE PRESENT AM, IS, ARE, AM NOT, ISN'T, AREN'T

Fill in the blanks using "AM, IS, ARE, AM NOT, ISN'T, AREN'T":

Example: A lemon \_sweet. It \_sour. (- / +) A lemon \_isn't\_sweet. It \_is\_sour. (- / +)

1. Airplanes \_ slow. They \_fast. (- / +)
2. Copper \_cheap. Diamonds \_expensive. (+/ +)
3. Cows \_insects. (-)
4. Dave and Adrian \_sisters. (-)
5. Germany, England, and Spain \_cities. (-)
6. He \_ a postman. (+)
7. I \_ a professional football player. (-)
8. I \_ hungry. (-)
9. I \_ from San Francisco. I \_ from Canada. (+ / -)
10. I know you. You ..... in my class. (+)
11. Ice cream and candy \_sweet. (+)
12. It \_an onion. (+)
13. Jasmine \_a student. (-)
14. London \_a big city. (+)
15. Manhattan \_an island. (-)
16. Mariah \_a beautiful girl. She \_ugly. (+ / -)
17. Mark \_20 years old. (+)
18. Maths \_ hard. It \_easy. (+ / -)
19. Mr. Richards \_a lawyer. (+)
20. My brother \_married. He \_single. (+ / -)
21. New York \_near to New Jersey. (+)
22. Newsweek \_a magazine. (+)
23. Susan and I \_teachers. (-)
24. They \_brothers. (- / +)
25. They \_ mammals. (- / +)
26. Today \_cloudy. It \_bright. (+ / -)
27. We \_friends. (+)
28. We \_students. (- / +)

# TO BE (Present) SINGULAR to PLURAL - QUESTIONS

**Where** asks about location. **Where** comes at the beginning of the question, in front of **be**.

QUESTION

SHORT ANSWER + (LONG ANSWER)

BE + SUBJECT

(a) **Is** **the book** on the table? → Yes, **it is**. (*The book is on the table.*)  
(b) **Are** **the books** on the table? → Yes, **they are**. (*The books are on the table.*)

WHERE + BE + SUBJECT

(c) **Where** **is** **the book?** → **On the table.** (*The book is on the table.*)  
(d) **Where** **are** **the books?** → **On the table.** (*The books are on the table.*)

**Change the following sentences to questions.**

Examples: This is a book. Is this a book?

1. This is a chair. \_\_\_\_\_
2. That is a map. \_\_\_\_\_
3. This is a student. \_\_\_\_\_
4. That is a cat. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The book is on the table. \_\_\_\_\_
6. She is in London. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I am a student. \_\_\_\_\_
8. A camel is an animal. \_\_\_\_\_
9. That is a pen. \_\_\_\_\_
10. You are a teacher. \_\_\_\_\_
11. It is a stamp. \_\_\_\_\_
12. It is a book. \_\_\_\_\_
13. It is a notebook. \_\_\_\_\_
14. This is a newspaper. \_\_\_\_\_
15. That is a door. \_\_\_\_\_
16. She is a doctor. \_\_\_\_\_
17. He is an actor. \_\_\_\_\_
18. This is a sentence. \_\_\_\_\_
19. That is a mosque. \_\_\_\_\_
20. This is a watch. \_\_\_\_\_
21. That is a computer. \_\_\_\_\_
22. The pen is in the box. \_\_\_\_\_
23. The cat is under the chair. \_\_\_\_\_
24. The boy is in the classroom. \_\_\_\_\_

# TO BE (Present) PLURAL to SINGULAR

*Change the following sentences to singular.*

Examples: a) They are birds.

*It is a bird.*

b) The pens are on the desk.

*The pen is on the desk.*

1. These are letters. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Those are windows. \_\_\_\_\_
3. They are magazines. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Those are spoons. \_\_\_\_\_
5. These are bottles. \_\_\_\_\_
6. They are cars. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Those are bananas. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Chickens are birds. \_\_\_\_\_
9. The dogs are outside. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Those are radios. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Those shirts are green. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Planes are fast. \_\_\_\_\_
13. These hotels are large. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Those are soldiers. \_\_\_\_\_
15. These are pictures. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Those are envelopes. \_\_\_\_\_
17. The cars are in the garage. \_\_\_\_\_
18. The pictures are on the wall. \_\_\_\_\_
19. The desks are in the classroom. \_\_\_\_\_
20. The teachers are in the school. \_\_\_\_\_
21. The planes are at the airport. \_\_\_\_\_
22. The photographs are in the album. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Those are dangerous animals. \_\_\_\_\_
24. These are good books. \_\_\_\_\_

# TO BE (Present) PLURAL

**Make sentences using the correct form of the present tense of to be**

Examples: a) he – teacher

He is a teacher.

b) they – tall

They are tall.

1. Ali – doctor \_\_\_\_\_
2. he - intelligent student ? \_\_\_\_\_
3. he - New York \_\_\_\_\_
4. he - not – actor \_\_\_\_\_
5. I – late \_\_\_\_\_
6. it - blackboard \_\_\_\_\_
7. John and Mary – London \_\_\_\_\_
8. Mary – engineer \_\_\_\_\_
9. she – cook \_\_\_\_\_
10. she - not – nurse \_\_\_\_\_
11. she-happy \_\_\_\_\_
12. that – chalkboard ? \_\_\_\_\_
13. that chair – comfortable \_\_\_\_\_
14. the car – garage \_\_\_\_\_
15. the girl – library \_\_\_\_\_
16. the students - the bus \_\_\_\_\_
17. the students - the classroom \_\_\_\_\_
18. they – English \_\_\_\_\_
19. they – foreigners \_\_\_\_\_
20. they – students \_\_\_\_\_
21. this-island \_\_\_\_\_
22. we – fine \_\_\_\_\_
23. we – holiday \_\_\_\_\_
24. where - my car? \_\_\_\_\_

# TO BE PRESENT

**Example:** Make meaningful sentences.

*(Chris, 9, student, short, not Chinese)*

*Chris is nine years old. He is a student. He is short. He isn't Chinese.*

1. (Leonard and Mike, 25, firemen, tall, American)

---

2. (Patty and Brian, 12, not electrician, short, not Turkish children)

---

3. (Natalie and I, nurse, not tall, French)

---

4. (Mark, 19, accountant, short, British)

---

5. (Cengiz, 23, lieutenant, not blonde, )

---

6. Steve / good rider /

---

7. soup / hot

---

8. the baby / asleep (-)

---

9. L.A. Lakers / basketball team /?

---

## TO BE PRESENT - Questions

**Answer these questions:**

1. Are trees green or gray?

---

2. Are clouds brown or white?

---

3. Is it an English or French dictionary? (French)

---

4. Is it a sports car or a classic car? (classic)

---

5. Is Egypt in Europe or in Africa?

---

6. Is it a butterfly or a bee? (butterfly)

---

7. Are they skirts or pullovers? (pullovers)

---

8. Is he an outlaw or a guardian? (outlaw)

---

9. Is your father young or old? (old)

---

10. Are we army officers or police officers? (army)

---

# TO BE PRESENT - Questions

Read the passage underline the to be present verbs and answer the questions:

**Sophia:** I am Sophia Berger. Are you Jordan Turner?

**Jordan:** Yes, I am. Are you English?

**Sophia:** Hector is. I am French. Are you from the United States?

**Jordan:** Yes, I am. Hector, are you from London?

**Hector:** Yes, I am. Are you from California?

**Jordan:** No, I am from New York City. Is London a big city?

**Hector:** Yes, it is a big city. Sophia, are you from Lyon?

**Sophia:** Yes, I am from Lyon.

**Hector:** Is Lyon near Florence?

**Sophia:** No, it isn't. Florence is in Italy.

**Hector:** Oh, isn't it in France? I am a real fool.

**Jordan:** No, Hector. Of course you are not a fool! Are you and Sophia students?

**Hector:** I am a student. She is an actress in France. We are tourists in the United States.

**Sophia:** Are you a student, Jordan?

**Jordan:** No, I am not a student. I'm a lawyer. I am on a holiday.

Give long answers. If the answer is negative, then give the right answer:

Example: Is Sophia from Paris?

...No, she isn't..... She is from Lyon.....

1. Is Jordan from California?..

---

2. Is Florence in Italy?

---

3. Are Sophia and Hector students?

---

4. Is Hector from Manchester?

---

5. Is Sophia a dancer?

## TO BE PRESENT - WH Questions

1. what / you / surname?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. what / your / teachers / name?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. where / his / son / from?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. where / you / evening?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. where / your / dictionary?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. where / your / flat.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. where / your / house.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. where / your / students?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. who / first / student / class.  
\_\_\_\_\_

Complete question with where, who, what, how much, and how old.

1. \_\_\_ is your English teacher? “Mr. Adams”  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_ is Italy? “In Europe”  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_ is his brother? “5 years old”  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_ is a drink? “50 p.”  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_ is her address? “65, North Street , New Jersey”  
\_\_\_\_\_

# TO BE PAST

| PRESENT TIME   | PAST TIME   |
|--|---|
| (a) I <b>am</b> in class <b>today</b> .<br>(c) Alice <b>is</b> at the library <b>today</b> .<br>(e) My friends <b>are</b> at home <b>today</b> . | (b) I <b>was</b> in class <b>yesterday</b> .<br>(d) Alice <b>was</b> at the library <b>yesterday</b> .<br>(f) My friends <b>were</b> at home <b>yesterday</b> . |
| <b>SIMPLE PAST TENSE OF BE</b><br>Singular<br><b>I was</b><br><b>you were</b> (one person)<br><b>she was</b><br><b>he was</b><br><b>it was</b>   | Plural<br><b>we were</b><br><b>you were</b> (more than one person)<br><b>they were</b>  |

$\left. \begin{matrix} I \\ she \\ he \\ it \end{matrix} \right\} + was$   
 $\left. \begin{matrix} we \\ you \\ they \end{matrix} \right\} + were$

Change

the following sentences to past tense using the time expressions in brackets.

Examples: He is ill. (yesterday) He was ill yesterday.  
 We are at home. (last night) We were at home last night.

- She is late. (last night) \_\_\_\_\_
- The cat is hungry. (yesterday) \_\_\_\_\_
- I am tired. (this morning) \_\_\_\_\_
- The students are noisy. (five minutes ago) \_\_\_\_\_
- My father is in Germany. (last year) \_\_\_\_\_
- There is a man outside. (an hour ago) \_\_\_\_\_
- The doors are closed. (at 8 o'clock) \_\_\_\_\_
- He is a good player. (three years ago) \_\_\_\_\_
- The children are in the living room. (an hour ago) \_\_\_\_\_
- The weather is fine. (yesterday) \_\_\_\_\_
- He is a good actor. (when I was a boy) \_\_\_\_\_
- There are some newspapers on the table. (two hours ago) \_\_\_\_\_
- The boss is angry. (this morning) \_\_\_\_\_
- They are in China. (a fortnight ago) \_\_\_\_\_
- The sea is warm. (yesterday afternoon) \_\_\_\_\_
- My parents are in the kitchen. (five minutes ago) \_\_\_\_\_
- There are two men in the shop. (a minute ago) \_\_\_\_\_
- The firemen are on the roof. (at five o'clock) \_\_\_\_\_
- There is a bus at the bus stop. (a minute ago) \_\_\_\_\_
- He is a teacher. (in 1987) \_\_\_\_\_
- The boy is late. (yesterday morning) \_\_\_\_\_
- She is a secretary (two years ago) \_\_\_\_\_
- They are sad. (last night) \_\_\_\_\_
- He is in London. (in 1989) \_\_\_\_\_

# TO BE PAST (WAS, WERE)

Fill in the blanks. Use WAS / WERE: Write again.

Example: Mary and Susan ..... **were** ..... ill yesterday.

1. The weather - very hot last Saturday.
2. The students    at the theater last night.
3. Betty    in Germany last summer.
4. My brother and I    at the football stadium on Saturday.
5.    it cold yesterday?
6. Interviewer: What    it like during the First World War, Bill?  
Bill: It   a terrible time. I   a young man, so I   in the army. We   in Italy.  
Interviewer: Where    your wife and children?  
Bill: There   bombs and there   not a lot of food. The children   very young and they   very frightened.

---

---

---

## TO BE PAST – NEGATIVE (WASN'T, WEREN'T)

|   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) I <b>was not</b> in class yesterday.<br>(b) I <b>wasn't</b> in class yesterday.         | NEGATIVE CONTRACTIONS: <b>was + not = wasn't</b><br><b>were + not = weren't</b>  |
| (c) They <b>were not</b> at home last night.<br>(d) They <b>weren't</b> at home last night. | $\begin{array}{l} I \\ she \\ he \\ it \end{array} \left. \begin{array}{l} + \\ + \end{array} \right\} wasn't \qquad \begin{array}{l} we \\ you \\ they \end{array} \left. \begin{array}{l} + \\ + \end{array} \right\} weren't \end{array}$ |

Make

negative sentences using WAS / WERE: Write again.

1. Kevin   at my party.
2. Nick   in class yesterday.
3. It   warm yesterday.
4. Tina and Jim   late.
5. Susan   on the bus.
6. We   at the match   yesterday.
7. Our teachers   pleased with us.
8. I   at the restaurant.

---

---

---

# TO BE PAST - READING (was / wasn't / were)

Read the interview and answer the questions:

**Bill Jenkins is 100 years old today.**

**Interviewer:** Bill, I expect life is very different today than a hundred years ago. What **was** it like?

**Bill:** Yes, it is very different. Life **was** much quieter then. There are so many cars now. There **weren't** any cars when I **was** a boy.

**Interviewer:** Were you happy as a child?

**Bill:** Oh yes, I **was** very happy, but I'm still happy now!

**Interviewer:** Tell me about your family.

**Bill:** Well, my father **was** a postman and my mother **was** a cook. We **weren't** rich, but we **weren't** poor either. There **were** five children. My brothers and sisters **were** all younger than me but I'm the only one still here.

1. Were there any cars when he was a boy?

---

2. Was he happy or sad when he was a child?

---

3. What was his mother's job?

---

4. How many children were there in his family?

---

5. How old is Bill Jenkins?

---

# TO BE PAST – QUESTION

| YES/NO QUESTIONS  | SHORT ANSWER + (LONG ANSWER)  |
|---|---|
| (a) <b>Were you</b> in class yesterday?<br>(be) + (subject)           | → <b>Yes, I was.</b> (I was in class yesterday.)<br>→ <b>No, I wasn't.</b> (I wasn't in class yesterday.)     |
| (b) <b>Was Carlos</b> at home last night?<br>(be) + (subject)         | → <b>Yes, he was.</b> (He was at home last night.)<br>→ <b>No, he wasn't.</b> (He wasn't at home last night.) |
| INFORMATION QUESTIONS   | SHORT ANSWER + (LONG ANSWER)  |
| (c) <b>Where were you</b> yesterday?<br>Where + (be) + (subject)      | → <b>In class.</b> (I was in class yesterday.)  |
| (d) <b>Where was Jennifer</b> last night?<br>Where + (be) + (subject) | → <b>At home.</b> (She was at home last night.)   |

Make meaningful sentence.

Example: Jim/ at home/last night  
\_\_\_\_ Was Jim at home last night \_\_\_\_?

1. You / at school / on Monday.

2. David / here / yesterday.

3. the cinema / open / on Sunday.

4. Kate and Jane / late / yesterday.

5. you / in the football team / last year.

6. all your friends / at your party.

7. it / hot / last week.

8. Jim / at home / last night.

# TO BE PAST – Asking Question and Answer

*Respond as in the example.*

Examples: a) He **was** in Berlin. (**Madrid**)

Was he in Berlin? No, he **wasn't**. Where was he? He **was** in Madrid.

b) The play **was** boring. (**interesting**)

Was the play **boring**? No, it **wasn't**. How was it? It **was** interesting.

1. She was a cook last year. (**secretary**)

---

2. The weather was warm yesterday. (**cool**)

---

3. It was a plane. (**helicopter**)

---

4. It was Ali. (**Aslı**)

---

5. They were in Banbury last summer. (**Oxford**)

---

6. The workers were outside the factory. (**inside**)

---

7. He was late because of the traffic. (**fog**)

---

8. The students were lazy. (**studious**)

---

9. The questions were difficult. (**easy**)

---

10. He was the Prime Minister. (**the President**)

---

11. It was a video cassette. (**audio cassette**)

---

12. They were at home. (**at work**)

---

13. She was tall. (**short**)

---

14. The cat under the table. (**chair**)

---

15. He was in Britain. (**France**)

---

16. The meeting was on Wednesday. (**Tuesday**)

---

17. The football match was at two o'clock. (**three**)

---

18. He was in Germany five years ago. (**France**)

---

# THE THERE IS - THERE ARE

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>THERE</b> + <b>BE</b> + <b>SUBJECT</b> + <b>LOCATION</b></p> <p>(a) <b>There</b> <b>is</b> <b>a bird</b> in the tree.</p> <p>(b) <b>There</b> <b>are</b> <b>four birds</b> in the tree.</p> | <p><b>There</b> + <b>be</b> is used to say that something exists in a particular location.</p> <p>Notice: The subject follows <b>be</b>:</p> <p><i>there + is + singular noun</i><br/><i>there + are + plural noun</i></p> |
| <p>(c) <b>There's</b> a bird in the tree.</p> <p>(d) <b>There're</b> four birds in the tree.</p>  | <p>Contractions:</p> <p><i>there + is = there's</i><br/><i>there + are = there're</i></p>  |

Complete the following sentences by using **there is** or **there are**.

Examples: \_\_\_\_\_ some tea in the glass. **There is** some tea in the glass.  
\_\_\_\_\_ some lions in the zoo. **There are** some lions in the zoo.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ a bus at the bus stop.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ some chairs in the room.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ seven days in a week.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of books in the library.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ a TV set in the room.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of bread at the baker's.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ a little sugar in my tea.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ a few men on the bus.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ some beef on the plate.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ some people outside.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ a typewriter in the office.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ twelve months in a year.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ sixty seconds in a month.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ not any students in the classroom now.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ not any water in the bottle.
16. \_\_\_\_\_ not any milk in the jug.
17. \_\_\_\_\_ three bottles of milk in the fridge.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ two loaves of bread on the table.
19. \_\_\_\_\_ some women on the train.
20. \_\_\_\_\_ a post office opposite the school.
21. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of children in the classroom.
22. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of water in the jug.
23. \_\_\_\_\_ some cars in the garage.
24. \_\_\_\_\_ not any buses at the bus stop.

# THERE IS – THERE ARE – QUESTION FORM

| QUESTION   | SHORT ANSWER   |
|--|--|
| BE + THERE + SUBJECT   |  |
| (a) <b>Is</b> <b>there</b> <b>any milk</b> in the refrigerator?  | → Yes, <b>there is.</b><br>→ No, <b>there isn't.</b>   |
| (b) <b>Are</b> <b>there</b> <b>any eggs</b> in the refrigerator? | → Yes, <b>there are.</b><br>→ No, <b>there aren't.</b> |

Change the

*sentences above to question.*

Examples: There is some tea in the glass. Is there any tea in the glass?  
There are some lions in the zoo. Are there any lions in the zoo?

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_
16. \_\_\_\_\_
17. \_\_\_\_\_
18. \_\_\_\_\_
19. \_\_\_\_\_
20. \_\_\_\_\_
21. \_\_\_\_\_
22. \_\_\_\_\_
23. \_\_\_\_\_
24. \_\_\_\_\_

# HAVE GOT - HAS GOT

| Affirmative  | Negative   | Question - short answers  |
|--|--|---|
| I have got (I've got)<br>You have got (you've got)<br>He has got (he's got)<br>She has got (she's got)<br>It has got (it's got)<br>We have got (we've got)<br>You have got (you've got)<br>They have got (they've got) | I have not got (I haven't got)<br>You have not got (you haven't got)<br>He has not got (he hasn't got)<br>She has not got (she hasn't got)<br>It has not got (it hasn't got)<br>We have not got (we haven't got)<br>You have not got (you haven't got)<br>They have not got (they haven't got) | Have I got?<br>Have you got?<br>Has he got?<br>Has she got?<br>Has it got?<br>Have we got?<br>Have you got?<br>Have they got? |

Complete the following sentences using **have got** or **has got**.

Examples: I have got a pet.  
He has got some coffee.

1. George and Mary have got a new flat.

---

2. My uncle has got a cat.

---

3. He has got a hat.

---

4. He has got very few friends.

---

5. I have got a car.

---

6. I have got a little furniture.

---

7. I have got a lot of books.

---

8. She has got some chocolate.

---

9. I have got some shirts.

---

10. My brother has got a new book.

---

11. My father has got a lot of tools.

---

12. My mother has got a lot of dresses.

---

13. My sister has got a little time.

---

14. Mary has got some fruit.

15. Soma students \_\_\_ some soup.

---

16. ohn \_\_\_ three brothers.

---

17. She \_\_\_ two children.

---

18. She \_\_\_ a rabbit.

---

19. They \_\_\_ a new house.

---

20. Mary and John \_\_\_ two houses.

---

21. They \_\_\_ a lot of money.

---

22. We \_\_\_ a nice school.

---

23. We \_\_\_ an old car.

---

24. We \_\_\_ some relatives.

---

## HAVE GOT-HAS GOT

Joan is talking about the things in her bag. Read the paragraph and complete with the correct form of "have got" or "has got"

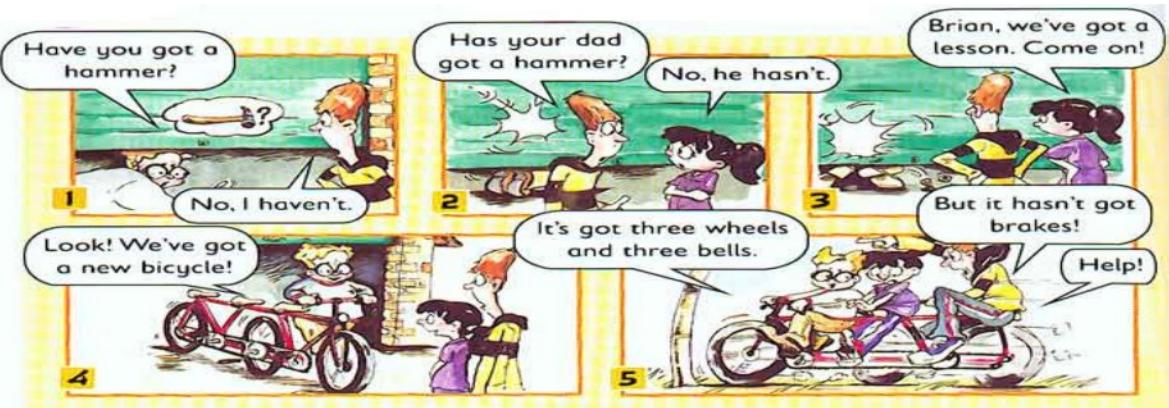
Joan: "Let's see. OK, here I have got a pen. Look, I \_\_\_ many keys. These are my car keys and those over there are my house keys. I \_\_\_ my identity card, credit card and my phone card. I \_\_\_ a mobile phone but I \_\_\_ phone cards. I \_\_\_ a comb and a tube of lipstick. Oh, I \_\_\_ a camera with me! You see, I \_\_\_ a big bag! My friend Julie \_\_\_ a small bag and she \_\_\_ many things in her bag! She only \_\_\_ her identity card, credit card, a hairbrush and her keys, that's all! What about you? \_\_\_ you \_\_\_ many things in your bag?"

---

---

---

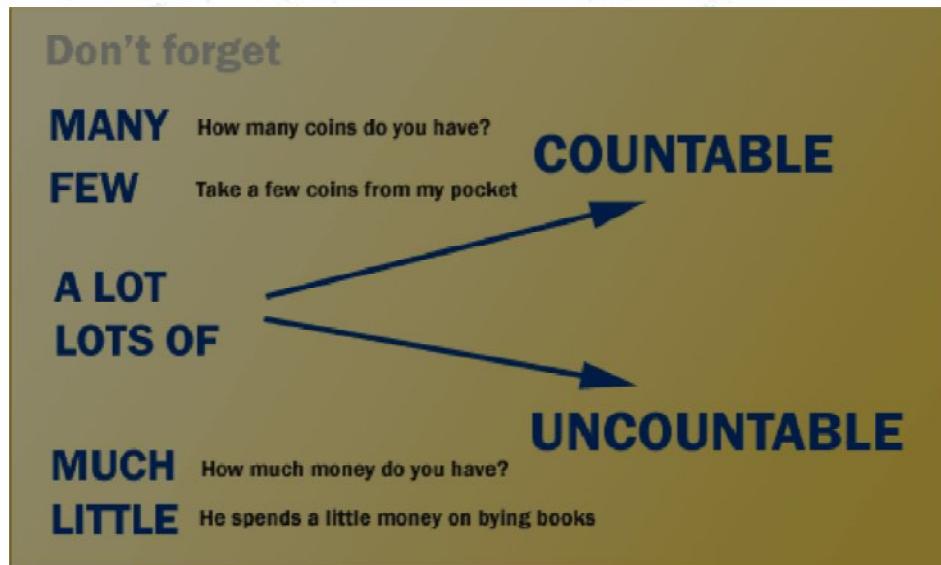
---



# HOW MANY - HOW MUCH

(have got - has got)

| QUESTION  | SHORT ANSWER + (LONG ANSWER)                        |
|---|---|
| <i>HOW MANY + SUBJECT + ARE + THERE + LOCATION</i>          |   |
| (a) <b>How many chapters</b> are <b>there</b> in this book? | → Twelve. (There are twelve chapters in this book.) |
| (b) <b>How many provinces</b> are <b>there</b> in Canada?   | → Ten. (There are ten provinces in Canada.)         |



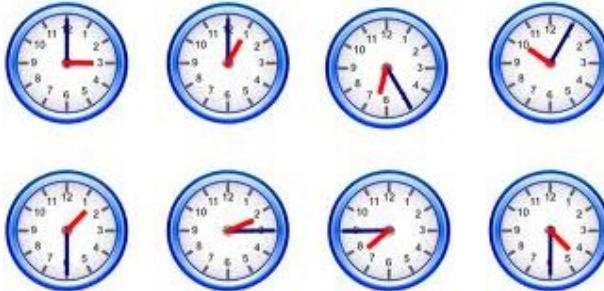
Ask questions beginning with **How many** or **How much**.

Examples: I have got a pet. **How many** pets have you got?  
He has got some coffee. **How much** coffee has he got?

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_

# TELLING THE TIME

| QUESTION                   | ANSWER  |   |
|----------------------------|---|---|
| (a) What day is it?        | <b>It's</b> Monday.   | In English, people use <b>it</b> to express (to talk about) time.       |
| (b) What month is it?      | <b>It's</b> September.  |   |
| (c) What year is it?       | <b>It's</b> _____. Look at Appendixes 2 and 3 in the back of the book for lists of days, months, and numbers. |   |
| (d) What's the date today? | <b>It's</b> September 15th.   |   |
|                            | <b>It's</b> the 15th of September.  |   |
| (e) What time is it?       | <b>It's</b> 9:00.*<br><b>It's</b> nine.<br><b>It's</b> nine o'clock.<br><b>It's</b> nine (o'clock) A.M.       | Look at Appendix 4 in the back of the book for ways of saying the time. |



Tell the following times in two ways as in the example.

Examples: 7.15 It is a quarter past seven. It is seven fifteen.

1. 05.05 \_\_\_\_\_
2. 1.10 \_\_\_\_\_
3. 1.15 \_\_\_\_\_
4. 10.05 \_\_\_\_\_
5. 10.44 \_\_\_\_\_
6. 10.50 \_\_\_\_\_
7. 11.11 \_\_\_\_\_
8. 11.40 \_\_\_\_\_
9. 11.47 \_\_\_\_\_
10. 11.55 \_\_\_\_\_
11. 12.08 \_\_\_\_\_
12. 12.30 \_\_\_\_\_
13. 12.35 \_\_\_\_\_
14. 13.18 \_\_\_\_\_
15. 13.23 \_\_\_\_\_
16. 13.28 \_\_\_\_\_
17. 13.55 \_\_\_\_\_
18. 13.58 \_\_\_\_\_
19. 17.59 \_\_\_\_\_
20. 19.26 \_\_\_\_\_

**21.** 19.37 \_\_\_\_\_

**22.** 2.10 \_\_\_\_\_

**23.** 2.15 \_\_\_\_\_

**24.** 2.55 \_\_\_\_\_

**25.** 22.22 \_\_\_\_\_

**26.** 22.36 \_\_\_\_\_

**27.** 22.57 \_\_\_\_\_

**28.** 23.55 \_\_\_\_\_

**29.** 3.30 \_\_\_\_\_

**30.** 3.55 \_\_\_\_\_

**31.** 4.35 \_\_\_\_\_

**32.** 5.33 \_\_\_\_\_

**33.** 6.05 \_\_\_\_\_

**34.** 6.30 \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

**35.** 6.32 \_\_\_\_\_

**36.** 6.35 \_\_\_\_\_

**37.** 7.00 \_\_\_\_\_

**38.** 7.20 \_\_\_\_\_

**39.** 8.39 \_\_\_\_\_

**40.** 8.40 \_\_\_\_\_

**41.** 8.45 \_\_\_\_\_

**42.** 8.48 \_\_\_\_\_

**43.** 9.00 \_\_\_\_\_

**44.** 9.15 \_\_\_\_\_

**45.** 9.19 \_\_\_\_\_

**46.** 9.22 \_\_\_\_\_

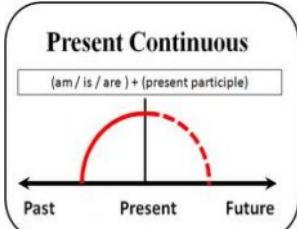
**47.** 9.27 \_\_\_\_\_

**48.** 9.35 \_\_\_\_\_



# PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE (Affirmative/Positive Form)

am + -ing (a) I **am sitting** in class right now.  
is + -ing (b) Rita **is sitting** in class right now.  
are + -ing (c) You **are sitting** in class right now.



In (a): When I say this sentence, I am in class. I am sitting. I am not standing. The action (sitting) is happening right now, and I am saying the sentence at the same time.

**am, is, are** = helping verbs  
**sitting** = the main verb

**am, is, are + -ing** = the present progressive tense\*

**Make sentences in present progressive tense using the cues.**

Examples: Ali - write a letter. Ali **is writing** a letter.

We - listen to the teacher. We **are listening** to the teacher.

1. Ali - talk to the teacher. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Fatima - clean the blackboard. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He - carry an umbrella. \_\_\_\_\_
4. He - have a bath. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He - look at his watch. \_\_\_\_\_
6. He - read a book. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I - have breakfast. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I - learn French. \_\_\_\_\_
9. John - listen to the radio. \_\_\_\_\_
10. She - cook. \_\_\_\_\_
11. She - study English. \_\_\_\_\_
12. She - watch TV. \_\_\_\_\_
13. The baby - sleep. \_\_\_\_\_
14. The dog - run after the cat. \_\_\_\_\_
15. The girl - buy a newspaper. \_\_\_\_\_
16. The policeman - look for the man. \_\_\_\_\_
17. The students - do homework. \_\_\_\_\_
18. The teacher - ask some questions. \_\_\_\_\_
19. The tourists - visit the museum. \_\_\_\_\_
20. They - drank tea. \_\_\_\_\_
21. They - learn German. \_\_\_\_\_
22. They - run. \_\_\_\_\_
23. We - play football. \_\_\_\_\_
24. We - read a story. \_\_\_\_\_

# PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE (Question/Negative Form)

| QUESTION  |  |  |  | SHORT ANSWER + (LONG ANSWER)   |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| BE + SUBJECT + -ING                               |  |  |  |  |
| (a) <b>Is</b> Mary <b>sleeping</b>                |  |  |  | → Yes, <b>she is</b> . (She's sleeping.)<br>→ No, <b>she's not</b> . (She's not sleeping.)<br>→ No, <b>she isn't</b> . (She isn't sleeping.) |
| (b) <b>Are</b> you <b>watching</b> TV?            |  |  |  | → Yes, <b>I am</b> . (I'm watching TV.)<br>→ No, <b>I'm not</b> . (I'm not watching TV.)   |
| Q-WORD + BE + SUBJECT + -ING                      |  |  |  |  |
| (c) <b>Where</b> <b>is</b> Mary <b>sleeping?</b>  |  |  |  | → <b>On the sofa</b> . (She's sleeping on the sofa.)   |
| (d) <b>Why</b> <b>are</b> you <b>watching</b> TV? |  |  |  | → <b>Because I like this program</b> . (I'm watching TV because I like this program.)  |

Put the sentences above first to question then to negative.

Example: Ali is writing a letter. Is Ali writing a letter? Ali isn't writing a letter.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_
16. \_\_\_\_\_
17. \_\_\_\_\_
18. \_\_\_\_\_
19. \_\_\_\_\_
20. \_\_\_\_\_
21. \_\_\_\_\_
22. \_\_\_\_\_
23. \_\_\_\_\_
24. \_\_\_\_\_

# PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE (Question/Negative Form)

Answer the questions as in the example.

Examples: Is Ali running or walking? He isn't running. He is walking.  
Are they laughing or crying? They aren't laughing. They are crying.

1. Are the students listening to the teacher or reading their books?

2. Are they carrying the tables or the chairs?

3. Are they drinking tea or coffee?

4. Are they talking or thinking?

5. Are they waiting for a bus or a mini-bus?

6. Are they watching TV or sleeping?

7. Are you buying a newspaper or a magazine?

8. Are you closing the door or the window?

9. Are you eating an apple or an orange?

10. Are you looking for your pen or your pencil?

11. Are you opening your books or your notebooks?

12. Are you playing basketball or volleyball?

13. Are you reading a book or a newspaper?

14. Is Ahmet having lunch or dinner?

15. Is Betty dancing or singing?

16. Is Bob learning Arabic or Turkish?

17. Is Hasan listening to the radio or studying?

18. Is Mary cooking or making tea?

19. Is Osman writing a letter or doing his homework?

20. Is she drawing a picture or writing something?

21. Is she laughing or smiling?

22. Is the dog barking or eating something?

23. Is the horse eating grass or drinking water?

24. Is the policeman sitting or standing?

# PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE (Question/Negative Form)

Ask questions and give answers in present PROGRESSIVE tense

Example: Mary – run - walk. A: Is Mary running? B: No, she isn't.  
A: What is she doing? B: She is walking.

1. George – sleep - watch TV.

2. Hasan - drink tea - coffee.

3. Sally - write a letter - do homework.

4. Fatima - watch TV - listen to the radio.

5. Bob - read a story - make a speech.

6. your mother – cook - wash the dishes.

7. the doctor - write a prescription - examine a patient.

8. the teacher - ask a question - write a sentence.

9. the secretary – type - talk on the telephone.

10. Ahmet - wash his car - paint his car.

11. your brother - learn French - English.

12. the students – read - write.

13. Osman – swim - run.

14. Paul and Bill – work - have a rest.

15. the children – sleep - have breakfast.

16. the taxi driver – drive - wait for a customer.

17. you - wait for a bus - a friend.

18. the women – talk - laugh.

19. the policemen - look for the car - the gun.

20. Selma – talk - think.

21. Ali - listen to the concert - the news.

22. the cat – sleep - run after a mouse.

23. Bob – help his father - mother.

24. the children - play tennis - volleyball.

# PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE (WH question form )

Ask information questions in present **PROGRESSIVE** tense.

Examples: He is writing something. What is he writing?  
Somebody is sleeping. Who is sleeping?

1. He is doing something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. He is drinking something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. He is looking at something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. He is phoning somebody.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. He is taking the books somewhere.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. He is waiting for somebody.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. I am looking for something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. She is buying something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. She is cooking something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. She is eating something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. She is going somewhere.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. She is staying somewhere.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Some people are standing by the door.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Somebody is following us.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Somebody is helping the teacher.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Something is moving.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. The police are following somebody.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. They are carrying something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. They are coming from somewhere.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. They are doing something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. They are helping somebody.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. They are reading something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. We are talking to somebody.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE

|   | SINGULAR   | PLURAL           | Notice: The verb after <b>she, he, it</b> (3rd person singular) has a final <b>-s</b> : <b>talks</b> .   |
|---|--|------------------|--|
| 1st PERSON  | <b>I talk</b>  | <b>we talk</b>   |  |
| 2nd PERSON  | <b>you talk</b>  | <b>you talk</b>  |  |
| 3rd PERSON  | <b>she talks</b><br><b>he talks</b><br><b>it rains</b> | <b>they talk</b> |  |
| (a) I <b>eat</b> breakfast <b>every morning</b> .<br>(b) Ann <b>speaks</b> English <b>every day</b> .<br>(c) We <b>sleep</b> <b>every night</b> .<br>(d) They <b>go</b> to the beach <b>every weekend</b> . |  |                  | The simple present tense expresses habits. In (a): Eating breakfast is a habit, a usual activity. <b>Every morning</b> = Monday morning, Tuesday morning, Wednesday morning, Thursday morning, Friday morning, Saturday morning, and Sunday morning. |

## FREQUENCY ADVERB

| SUBJECT + BE + FREQUENCY ADVERB            | Frequency adverbs follow <b>be</b> .                                      |
|--|---|
| Tom + is + <b>always</b> + late for class. | Frequency adverbs follow <b>be</b> .                                      |
| Tom + + <b>always</b> + comes late.        | Frequency adverbs come before all simple present verbs except <b>be</b> . |

# SPELLING and PRONOUNCIATION of -S, -ES, IES

| SPELLING  | PRONUNCIATION  |   |
|---|--|---|
| (a) rub → <b>rubs</b><br>ride → <b>rides</b><br>smile → <b>smiles</b><br>dream → <b>dreams</b><br>run → <b>runs</b><br>wear → <b>wears</b><br>drive → <b>drives</b><br>see → <b>sees</b><br>snow → <b>snows</b> | <i>rub/z/ /d<sup>t</sup>/</i><br><i>ride/z/</i><br><i>smile/z/</i><br><i>dream/z/</i><br><i>run/z/</i><br><i>wear/z/</i><br><i>drive/z/</i><br><i>see/z/</i><br><i>snow/z/</i> | To form a simple present verb in 3rd person singular, you usually add only <b>-s</b> , as in (a) and (b).   |
| (b) drink → <b>drinks</b><br>sleep → <b>sleeps</b><br>write → <b>writes</b><br>laugh → <b>laughs</b>  | <i>drink/s/</i><br><i>sleep/s/</i><br><i>write/s/</i><br><i>laugh/s/</i>   | In (a): <b>-s</b> is pronounced /z/. The final sounds in (a) are <i>voiced</i> .<br>In (b): <b>-s</b> is pronounced /s/. The final sounds in (b) are <i>voiceless</i> . |
| (c) push → <b>pushes</b><br>teach → <b>teaches</b><br>kiss → <b>kisses</b><br>fix → <b>fixes</b>  | <i>push/əz/</i><br><i>teach/əz/</i><br><i>kiss/əz/</i><br><i>fix/əz/</i>   | End of verb: <b>-sh, -ch, -ss, -x</b><br>Spelling: add <b>-es</b><br>Pronunciation: /əz/  |
| (d) cry → <b>cries</b><br>study → <b>studies</b>  | <i>cry/z/</i><br><i>study/z/</i>   | End of verb: consonant + <b>-y</b><br>Spelling: change <b>y</b> to <b>i</b> , add <b>-es</b>  |
| (e) pay → <b>pays</b><br>buy → <b>buys</b>  | <i>pay/z/</i><br><i>buy/z/</i>   | End of verb: vowel + <b>-y</b><br>Spelling: add <b>-s</b>   |
| (f) have → <b>has</b><br>go → <b>goes</b><br>do → <b>does</b>   | <i>/hæz/</i><br><i>/gowz/</i><br><i>/dəz/</i>  | The 3rd person singular forms of <i>have</i> , <i>go</i> , and <i>do</i> are irregular.   |

# SIMPLE PRESENT – VERB –S,-ES

Put the words in 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular.

Example: get - gets

|             |       |              |       |
|-------------|-------|--------------|-------|
| 1. arise    | _____ | 38. mix      | _____ |
| 2. become   | _____ | 39. mow      | _____ |
| 3. break    | _____ | 40. need     | _____ |
| 4. bring    | _____ | 41. pay      | _____ |
| 5. bring    | _____ | 42. plan     | _____ |
| 6. build    | _____ | 43. play     | _____ |
| 7. burst    | _____ | 44. practice | _____ |
| 8. carry    | _____ | 45. read     | _____ |
| 9. catch    | _____ | 46. ride     | _____ |
| 10. choose  | _____ | 47. rise     | _____ |
| 11. come    | _____ | 48. say      | _____ |
| 12. cook    | _____ | 49. see      | _____ |
| 13. cut     | _____ | 50. sell     | _____ |
| 14. do      | _____ | 51. send     | _____ |
| 15. dream   | _____ | 52. set      | _____ |
| 16. drink   | _____ | 53. shake    | _____ |
| 17. drive   | _____ | 54. shall    | _____ |
| 18. eat     | _____ | 55. shear    | _____ |
| 19. fight   | _____ | 56. shed     | _____ |
| 20. find    | _____ | 57. shine    | _____ |
| 21. finish  | _____ | 58. shoot    | _____ |
| 22. fly     | _____ | 59. show     | _____ |
| 23. forget  | _____ | 60. shut     | _____ |
| 24. forgive | _____ | 61. sleep    | _____ |
| 25. give    | _____ | 62. speak    | _____ |
| 26. go      | _____ | 63. speed    | _____ |
| 27. have    | _____ | 64. spend    | _____ |
| 28. hear    | _____ | 65. study    | _____ |
| 29. hit     | _____ | 66. swim     | _____ |
| 30. kiss    | _____ | 67. take     | _____ |
| 31. let     | _____ | 68. teach    | _____ |
| 32. lie     | _____ | 69. tell     | _____ |
| 33. like    | _____ | 70. think    | _____ |
| 34. live    | _____ | 71. upset    | _____ |
| 35. lose    | _____ | 72. use      | _____ |
| 36. make    | _____ | 73. wake     | _____ |
| 37. mistake | _____ | 74. write    | _____ |

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Third Person Singular)

*Rewrite the following sentences by changing the subject of the sentences to the third person singular.*

*Use **my brother**, **my mother**, **she** etc. (All of the (e)s endings in this exercise are pronounced /s/)*

**Example:** I work in Rome. My father works in Rome. I rarely cough. He rarely coughs.

1. I get up early.

2. I work in an office.

3. I start work at 9.

4. I write letters every week.

5. I eat lunch at home.

6. I keep my money in my wallet.

7. I stop talking when the bell rings.

8. I like ice cream.

9. I want to be a teacher.

10. I ask my father questions.

11. I visit my grandfather every Friday.

12. I lock the door every evening.

13. I post my letters in the afternoon.

14. I repeat what the teacher says.

15. I sometimes laugh.

16. I speak English and French.

17. I put on my uniform when I go to school.

18. I sleep eight hours a day.

19. I sometimes break a glass.

20. I sometimes make mistakes.

21. I help my mother.

22. I walk every morning.

23. I always talk seriously.

24. I rarely smoke.

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Third Person Singular)

Rewrite the following sentences by changing the subject of the sentences to the third person singular. Use **my brother, my mother, she** etc. (All of the (e)s endings in this exercise are pronounced /z/)

Examples: I live in Rome. My brother lives in Rome.

I listen to folk music. She listens to folk music.

1. I answer the questions easily.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I arrive home at 5.30.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I begin work at 8.30.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I buy a newspaper every morning.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. I clean my room every day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. I come to school by bus.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. I enjoy reading.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I go to work on foot.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. I leave home at 8 o'clock.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. I need some stamps.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. I never cry.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. I phone my father in the evening.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. I play with my friends.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. I prefer tea to coffee.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. I read a book every week.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. I run in the morning.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. I sometimes borrow money from my friends.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. I sometimes send postcards to my friends.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. I stand up when the teacher comes in.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. I stay at home when it rains.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. I tell them stories.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. I learn new words every day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. I turn off the TV when I go to bed. I always lose my keys.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. I brush my teeth every evening.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**25.** I catch the 8.30 bus every morning.

**26.** I change my clothes before I go to bed.

**27.** I choose the presents myself.

**28.** I close the shop at 6 o'clock.

**29.** I dress very quickly.

**30.** I finish work at 5.30.

**31.** I fix radios.

**32.** I manage a hotel.

**33.** I memorize the new words.

**34.** I pass my class every year.

**35.** I polish my shoes every week.

**36.** I practice my English.

**37.** I publish six books every year.

**38.** I raise wheat.

**39.** I relax when I get home.

**40.** I revise my notes before the exam.

**41.** I sometimes scratch my head.

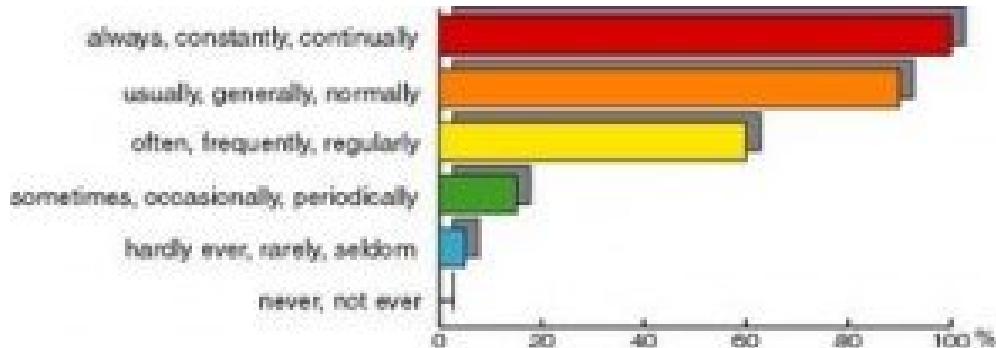
**42.** I sometimes surprise people.

**43.** I teach English.

**44.** I wish to get good marks.

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Adverbs of Frequency)

| SUBJECT + BE + FREQUENCY ADVERB  | Frequency adverbs follow <b>be</b> .                                      |
|--|---|
| Tom + is + <b>always</b> , <b>usually</b> , <b>often</b> , <b>sometimes</b> , <b>seldom</b> , <b>rarely</b> , <b>never</b> + late for class. |   |
| SUBJECT + FREQUENCY ADVERB + OTHER SIMPLE PRESENT VERBS  | Frequency adverbs come before all simple present verbs except <b>be</b> . |
| Tom + <b>always</b> , <b>usually</b> , <b>often</b> , <b>sometimes</b> , <b>seldom</b> , <b>rarely</b> , <b>never</b> + comes late.          |   |



The most common frequency adverbs in English are:

|              |            |                       |
|--------------|------------|-----------------------|
| Always       | Frequently | 100 % the time        |
| Usually      |            | about 90% the time    |
| Often        |            | about 80% of the time |
| Sometimes    |            | about 70% of the time |
| Occasionally |            | about 50% of the time |
| Seldom       |            | about 40% of the time |
| Rarely       |            | about 20% of the time |
| Never        |            | about 10% of the time |
|              |            | about 0% of the time  |

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Adverbs of Frequency)

Insert adverbs of frequency in the following sentences like **always**, **usually**, **sometimes**, **never**, **rarely**, **generally**, **occasionally**,

Examples: I drink coffee. I **never** drink coffee.

I visit my parents. I **often** visit my parents.

1. I watch TV.

2. I go to the cinema.

3. I study English.

4. I get angry.

5. I play football.

6. I drink apple juice.

7. I go to school by bus.

8. I sleep after lunch.

9. I get up early.

10. I go to bed early.

11. I have breakfast at home.

12. I have soup for breakfast.

13. I sing songs.

14. I write letters.

15. I listen to the radio.

16. I buy a newspaper.

17. I make tea.

18. I do the washing up.

19. I play the guitar.

20. I run in the morning.

21. I smoke.

22. I go to the mosque.

23. I speak English.

24. I have breakfast in bed.

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Adverbs of Frequency)

*Rewrite the sentences using your father, mother, brother or a friend.*

**Example:** I drink coffee. My father never drinks coffee.

I visit my parents. My friend sometimes visits his parents.

1. I watch TV.

2. I go to the cinema.

3. I study English.

4. I get angry.

5. I play football.

6. I drink apple juice.

7. I go to school by bus.

8. I sleep after lunch.

9. I get up early.

10. I go to bed early.

11. I have breakfast at home.

12. I have soup for breakfast.

13. I sing songs.

14. I write letters.

15. I listen to the radio.

16. I buy a newspaper.

17. I make tea.

18. I do the washing up.

19. I play the guitar.

20. I run in the morning.

21. I smoke.

22. I go to the mosque.

23. I speak English.

24. I have breakfast in bed.

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Negative Sentence)

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(a) <b>I</b> <b>do not</b> drink coffee.<br/><b>We</b> <b>do not</b> drink coffee.<br/><b>You</b> <b>do not</b> drink coffee.<br/><b>They</b> <b>do not</b> drink coffee.</p> <p>(b) <b>She</b> <b>does not</b> drink coffee.<br/><b>He</b> <b>does not</b> drink coffee.<br/><b>It</b> <b>does not</b> drink coffee.</p> | <p>NEGATIVE: <b>I</b> <b>we</b> <b>you</b> <b>they</b> } + <b>do not</b> + main verb</p>  |
|  | <p><b>she</b> <b>he</b> <b>it</b> } + <b>does not</b> + main verb</p>   |
| <p><b>Do</b> and <b>does</b> are called "helping verbs."</p>   |   |
| <p>Notice in (b): In 3rd person singular, there is no <b>-s</b> on the main verb; the final <b>-s</b> is part of <b>does</b>.<br/>INCORRECT: <i>She does not drink coffee.</i></p>   |   |
| <p>(c) <b>I don't</b> drink tea.<br/>They <b>don't</b> have a car.</p> <p>(d) <b>He doesn't</b> drink tea.<br/>Mary <b>doesn't</b> have a car.</p>   | <p>CONTRACTIONS: <b>do not</b> = <b>don't</b><br/><b>does not</b> = <b>doesn't</b></p> <p>People usually use contractions when they speak.<br/>People often use contractions when they write.</p> |

Change the sentences above to negative.

Examples: *My friend visits his parents.*    *My friend doesn't visit his parents.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_
16. \_\_\_\_\_
17. \_\_\_\_\_
18. \_\_\_\_\_
19. \_\_\_\_\_
20. \_\_\_\_\_

21. \_\_\_\_\_  
22. \_\_\_\_\_  
23. \_\_\_\_\_  
24. \_\_\_\_\_

## SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Positive / Negative Sentence)

### Substitution Drill

**Example 1:** I live in London  
he He lives in London  
work He works in London  
shop He works in a shop.

**Example 2:** He He doesn't speak English  
they They don't speak English.  
German They don't speak German.  
we We don't speak German.

1. radio \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. Ankara \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. buy \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. does she? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. drink \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. every day \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. films \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. football \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. have \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

10. he \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

11. I \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

12. like \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

13. listen to \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

14. live \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

15. make \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

16. mistakes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

17. my father \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

18. never \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

19. office \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

20. once a week \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

21. play \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

22. rarely \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

23. sell \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

24. She \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

25. sometimes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

26. tea \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

27. the man \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

28. the news \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

29. they \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

30. TV \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

31. understand \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

32. usually \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

33. watch \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

34. you \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Questions)

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>DO/DOES + SUBJECT + MAIN VERB</p> <p>(a) <b>Do</b> <i>you</i> <b>like</b> coffee?</p> <p>(b) <b>Does</b> <i>Bob</i> <b>like</b> coffee?</p>   | <p>QUESTION FORMS, SIMPLE PRESENT</p> <p><b>Do I</b><br/> <b>Do you</b><br/> <b>Do we</b><br/> <b>Do they</b><br/> <b>Does she</b><br/> <b>Does he</b><br/> <b>Does it</b></p> <p>+ main verb (simple form)</p> |
|  | <p>Notice in (b): The main verb in the question does not have a final <b>-s</b>. The final <b>-s</b> is part of <b>does</b>.<br/> INCORRECT: <i>Does Bob likes coffee?</i></p>                                  |
| <p>(c) <b>Are you</b> a student?<br/> (d) INCORRECT: <i>Do you be a student?</i></p>   | <p>When the main verb is a form of <b>be</b>, <b>do</b> is NOT used. See Chart 1-9 for question forms with <b>be</b>.</p>   |
| <p>QUESTION</p> <p>(e) <b>Do you like tea?</b> → Yes, I <b>do</b>. (I like tea.)<br/> No, I <b>don't</b>. (I don't like tea.)</p> <p>(f) <b>Does Bob like tea?</b> → Yes, he <b>does</b>. (He likes tea.)<br/> No, he <b>doesn't</b>. (He doesn't like tea.)</p> | <p><b>Do</b>, <b>don't</b>, <b>does</b>, and <b>doesn't</b> are used in the short answers to yes/no questions in the simple present.</p>  |

Change the following sentences to question.

Example: I live in Rome. **Do you live in Rome?** She runs every morning. **Does she run every morning?**

1. Ali eats beans. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Bill has lunch at. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Doctors examine patients. \_\_\_\_\_
4. He gets up late. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He reads a newspaper every day. \_\_\_\_\_
6. He speaks Chinese. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He swims every summer. \_\_\_\_\_
8. He wears a watch. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I get up early. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I like coffee. \_\_\_\_\_
11. I speak English and German. \_\_\_\_\_
12. She goes home by bus. \_\_\_\_\_
13. She takes sugar in her coffee. \_\_\_\_\_
14. They drink tea every day. \_\_\_\_\_
15. They live in South Street. \_\_\_\_\_
16. They play cricket. \_\_\_\_\_
17. They study chemistry every day. \_\_\_\_\_
18. They walk to school every morning. \_\_\_\_\_
19. We go to school at 8. \_\_\_\_\_
20. We play football. \_\_\_\_\_
21. We study at the library. \_\_\_\_\_

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (WH questions)

| (WHERE)  | + | DO/DOES     | + | SUBJECT | + | MAIN VERB    | SHORT ANSWER   |
|--|---|-------------|---|---------|---|--------------|--|
| (a)  |   | <b>Do</b>   |   | they    |   | <i>live</i>  | in Tokyo? → <b>Yes</b> , they do. / <b>No</b> , they don't.  |
| (b) <b>Where</b>   |   | <b>do</b>   |   | they    |   | <i>live?</i> | → <b>In Tokyo.</b>   |
| (c)  |   | <b>Does</b> |   | Gina    |   | <i>live</i>  | in Rome? → <b>Yes</b> , she does. / <b>No</b> , she doesn't. |
| (d) <b>Where</b>   |   | <b>does</b> |   | Gina    |   | <i>live?</i> | → <b>In Rome.</b>  |
| NOTE: (a) and (c) are called “yes/no questions.” The answer to these questions can be <i>yes</i> or <i>no</i> . (b) and (d) are called “information questions.” The answer gives information. <b>Where</b> asks for information about place. |   |             |   |         |   |              |  |
| Notice in the examples: The form of yes/no questions and information questions is the same:<br>DO/DOES + SUBJECT + MAIN VERB   |   |             |   |         |   |              |  |

**Answer the following questions.**

Example: **Where** does a chemist work? A chemist works in a drugstore.  
What does a tailor do? A tailor makes clothes.

1. What do secretaries do?

---

2. What do singers do?

---

3. What does a barber do?

---

4. What does a butcher do?

---

5. What does a dentist do?

---

6. What does a doctor do?

---

7. What does a footballer do?

---

8. What does a greengrocer sell?

---

9. What does a grocer sell?

---

10. What does a guitarist do?

---

11. What does a mechanic do?

---

12. What does a pianist do?

---

13. What does a porter do?

14. What does a student do?

15. What does a taxi driver do?

16. What does a teacher do?

17. What does an English teacher do?

18. Where do doctors work?

19. Where do nurses work?

20. Where do teachers work?

21. Where does a mechanic work?

22. Where does a secretary work?

23. Where does a typist work?

24. Where does a waiter work?

## SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (WH questions)

*Answer the following questions.*

Example: Where do you live? I live in Ankara.

1. How do you go to school?

---

2. How much money do you spend a week?

---

3. How often do you go to the library?

---

4. How often do you play football?

---

5. How often do you study English?

---

6. What do you usually do in the evening?

---

7. What do you usually do on Sundays?

---

8. What do you usually drink in the morning?

9. What do you usually have for breakfast?

10. What does a mechanic do?

11. What does a secretary do?

12. What time do you go bed?

13. What time do you go to bed?

14. What time do you usually get up?

15. When do you have breakfast?

16. Where do you do your homework?

17. Where do you have lunch?

18. Where do your parents work?

19. Where does a doctor work?

20. Where does a teacher work?

21. Where does a waiter work?

22. Where does your father work?

23. Where does your mother have lunch?

24. Who do you usually study with?

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (WH questions)

Ask information questions beginning with the words in brackets.

Example: I get home at 7 o'clock. (What time) What time do you get home?  
She types carefully. (How) How does she type?

1. The students study very hard. (How)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. He speaks English fluently. (How)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. They drive dangerously. (How)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. She goes to work by bus. (How)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The milkman comes at 7.30. (What time)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. My father goes to work in the morning. (When)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Mr. and Mrs. Smith live on the third floor. (Who)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Bill runs very fast. (Who)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. My brother runs every morning. (What)  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. He buys a newspaper every day. (What)  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. He doesn't like chocolate. (What)  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. He doesn't drink coffee in the morning. (What)  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. He goes to the theatre once a month. (How often)  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. She drinks a lot of tea. (How much)  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. He speaks three languages. (How many)  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. He has two brothers. (How many)  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. I prefer the blue shirt. (Which)  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. The policeman wants to see you. (Whom)  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. I don't like him because he talks a lot. (Why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. He gets up early because he starts work early. (Why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. He goes skiing in the winter. (When)  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. I like Hasan's bicycle. (Whose)  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. My parents work in a hospital. (Where)  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. Ali lives in a flat. (Where)  
\_\_\_\_\_

# **SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (WH questions)**

Read the answers about ALAN and ask questions.

1. Alan's a lorry driver.

2. He's twenty-five years old.

3. He works five days a week.

4. He gets up at six o'clock every day.

5. He eats an enormous breakfast.

6. He drinks two cups of tea.

7. He leaves for work at half past six.

8. He has lunch in a transport café.

9. He comes home at five o'clock.

10. He goes to bed at ten o'clock.

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE & PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>STATEMENTS:</p> <p>(a) I <b><i>sit</i></b> in class <i>every day</i>.<br/>(b) I <b><i>am sitting</i></b> in class <i>right now</i>.<br/><br/>(c) The teacher <b><i>writes</i></b> on the board on <i>every day</i>.<br/>(d) The teacher <b><i>is writing</i></b> on the board <i>right now</i>.</p>                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The SIMPLE PRESENT expresses habits or usual activities, as in (a), (c), and (e).</li><li>The PRESENT PROGRESSIVE expresses actions that are happening right now, while the speaker is speaking, as in (b), (d), and (f).</li></ul> |
| <p>QUESTIONS:</p> <p>(e) <b><i>Do</i></b> you <b><i>sit</i></b> in class every day?<br/>(f) <b><i>Are</i></b> you <b><i>sitting</i></b> in class right now?<br/><br/>(g) <b><i>Does</i></b> the teacher <b><i>write</i></b> on the board every day?<br/>(h) <b><i>Is</i></b> the teacher <b><i>writing</i></b> on the board right now?</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The SIMPLE PRESENT uses <b><i>do</i></b> and <b><i>does</i></b> as helping verbs in questions.</li><li>The PRESENT PROGRESSIVE uses <b><i>am</i></b>, <b><i>is</i></b>, and <b><i>are</i></b> in questions.</li></ul>               |
| <p>NEGATIVES:</p> <p>(i) I <b><i>don't sit</i></b> in class every day.<br/>(j) I'm <b><i>not sitting</i></b> in class right now.<br/><br/>(k) The teacher <b><i>doesn't write</i></b> on the board every day.<br/>(l) The teacher <b><i>isn't writing</i></b> on the board right now.</p>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The SIMPLE PRESENT uses <b><i>do</i></b> and <b><i>does</i></b> as helping verbs in negatives.</li><li>The PRESENT PROGRESSIVE uses <b><i>am</i></b>, <b><i>is</i></b>, and <b><i>are</i></b> in negatives.</li></ul>               |

## SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE vs. Present Progressive

Change the following sentences to simple present tense. Add *every day*.

Examples: I am writing a letter. I write a letter every day.  
We are going to work. We go to work every day.

1. I am buying a newspaper. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I am drinking milk. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I am driving a book. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I am going shopping. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I am phoning my mother. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I am polishing my shoes. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I am washing my hands. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I am writing a report. \_\_\_\_\_
9. My brothers are going to school. \_\_\_\_\_
10. My sisters are listening to the radio. \_\_\_\_\_
11. The boys are playing chess. \_\_\_\_\_
12. The children are playing basketball. \_\_\_\_\_
13. The doctors are examining the patients. \_\_\_\_\_

14. They are asking questions. \_\_\_\_\_

15. They are having lunch. \_\_\_\_\_

16. They are reading the newspapers. \_\_\_\_\_

17. They are studying English. \_\_\_\_\_

18. They are waiting for the bus. \_\_\_\_\_

19. We are cleaning the classroom. \_\_\_\_\_

20. We are drinking tea. \_\_\_\_\_

21. We are eating bread and butter. \_\_\_\_\_

22. We are reading a book. \_\_\_\_\_

23. We are washing up. \_\_\_\_\_

24. We are watching TV. \_\_\_\_\_

## **SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Present Progressive to Simple Present)**

***Change the following sentences to simple present tense.***

Examples: I am writing a letter. (every week) I write a letter every week.  
She is listening to the radio. (every day) She listens to the radio **every day**.

1. She is cooking dinner. (every evening)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. They are playing table tennis. (every week)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. He is helping his mother. (sometimes)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I am drinking tea. (in the morning)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. He is doing his homework. (at home)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. She is going to school. (at 8)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. We are studying English. (in the evening)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. He is washing his car. (once a week)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Is he reading a newspaper? (every day)  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Are they walking? (every day)  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. She isn't having breakfast. (every morning)  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. He is having lunch. (at 1 o'clock)  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. We aren't going to work. (on Sunday)  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Is she doing her homework? (every day)  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. It isn't raining. (in July)  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Are you typing a letter? (every day)  
\_\_\_\_\_

17. He is watching TV. (every evening)

18. He isn't teaching English. (every day)

19. The boys are running. (every morning)

20. I am staying at home. (when it rains)

21. He is doing a crossword puzzle. (every Sunday)

22. She is typing the letters. (every day)

23. Are they fishing? (every weekend)

## SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE & PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

Make sentences as in the example.

Examples:

he - drink tea - coffee

He usually drinks tea but now he is drinking coffee.

I - play golf - tennis

I usually play golf but now I am playing tennis.

1. she - wear a skirt - a dress

2. he - eat steak - fish

3. they - play football - basketball

4. 4. we - travel by bus - train.

5. I - study science - English

6. he - run - walk

7. she - help her mother - father

8. he - read slowly - fast

9. they - watch TV - listen to the radio

10. I - have tea - milk

11. he - have a shower - bath

12. the cat - drink milk - water

13. Mr. Smith - wear a uniform - suit

14. she - have lunch at home - restaurant

15. he - play the guitar - violin

16. they - stay in a hotel - tent

17. we - study in the evening - watch TV

---

18. she - teach English – Persian

---

19. I - write a letter to my parents – postcard

---

20. he - speak German – French

---

21. he - drive to school – walk

---

22. we - speak Turkish – English

---

23. they - eat chicken – fish

---

24. the baby – laugh – cry

---

## **SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE & PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE**

**Write sentences. Use the PRESENT SIMPLE or the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE:**

**Example:** (Usually she / work / at the office, but this week she / work / at home.)

*Usually she works at the office, but this week she's working at home.*

1. (You / not / eat / very much at the moment. Are you ill?)

---

2. (She / know / three words in Italian!)

---

3. (I / take / the bus to work this week, but usually I / walk)

---

4. (I / study / Japanese this year. It's very difficult.)

---

5. (you / watch / the television at the moment?)

---

6. (I / not / remember / the name of the hotel.)

---

7. (She / speak / three languages.)

---

8. (The sun / shine /. It's a beautiful day!)

---

# SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE & PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

Supply a suitable present tense of the verbs in brackets. Use **simple present** or **present PROGRESSIVE** tense.

Examples: I English now. (**study**) I am studying English now.  
He never watch. (**wear**) He never wears a watch

1. I sometimes TV (**watch**)

---

2. My brother never tea in the morning. (**drink**)

---

3. He coffee now. (**drink**)

---

4. What the children in the kitchen? (**do**)

---

5. They something. (**eat**)

---

6. I usually up at seven o'clock. (**get**)

---

7. He because he is late. (**run**)

---

8. He usually a blue shirt but today he a green one (**wear**)

---

9. My father in an office. (**work**)

---

10. Look at that man! He something. (**steal**)

---

11. Don't make any noise! Somebody us. (**follow**)

---

12. The sun in the east. (**rise**)

---

13. It never in Saudi Arabia. (**snow**)

---

14. The manager on the telephone now. (**talk**)

---

15. My mother very well. (**cook**)

---

16. My father every day. (**work**)

---

17. She at present. (**work**)

---

18. What a driver? (**do**)

---

19. How you to school? (**go**)

---

20. you ever your parents? (**miss**)

---

21. Listen! Somebody a song. (**sing**)

---

22. I always people (**help**)

---

23. My father is a doctor. What your father? (**do**)

24. They dinner at the moment. (have)

25. I it now. (understand)

26. He a cup of tea now (want)

27. He to you now. (listen)

28. I them very well now. (hear)

29. I he is very rich now. (think)

30. He about his parents now. (think)

31. I that man very well now. (know)

32. He me a story now. (tell)

33. She in the kitchen now. (cook)

34. My father my new friend very much now. (like)

35. I you now. (believe)

36. He her some questions now. (ask)

37. They the football match now. (watch)

38. He a new car now. (need)

39. He his homework now. (do)

40. I it now. (remember)

41. Those flowers wonderful now. (smell)

42. I him now. (recognize)

43. This house to my brother now. (belong)

44. He a newspaper now. (read)

45. I him very much now. (love)

46. He a new car now. (have)

47. He dinner row. (have)

48. She me now. (hate)

# **SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE & PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE**

Complete the sentences with SIMPLE PRESENT or PRESENT PROGRESSIVE. Copy the text exactly.

Susan usually 1 **(go)** to school by bus, but now she 2 **(go)** to school by train. Mary often 3 **(read)** in bed, but today she is very tired and she 4 **(not / read)**. The boys usually 5 **(ride)** their bikes to school. They 6 **(like / ride)** their bikes. They 7 **(be)** very naughty boys. They always 8 **(go)** to school late. Today their teacher 9 **(be)** very angry, because they 10 **(be)** late again. Mary 11 **(like / eat)** sweets. Every morning she 12 **(have)** coffee with a lot of sweets and chocolate. For lunch she and her friends often 13 **(eat)** sweets or ice-cream. She 14 **(not / like / eat)** fruit or vegetables. She 15 **(eat / never)** eggs or cheese. Today she 16 **(be)** sick. She 17 **(sleep)** in her room now.

# ADJECTIVES

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p style="text-align: center;">ADJECTIVE + NOUN</p> <p>(a) I bought an <b>expensive</b> book.</p>  | <p>Adjectives can modify nouns, as in (a). See Chart 4-2 for a list of common adjectives.</p>  |
| <p style="text-align: center;">NOUN + NOUN</p> <p>(b) I bought a <b>grammar</b> book</p>   | <p>Nouns can modify other nouns. In (b): <i>grammar</i> is a noun that is used as an adjective to modify another noun (<i>book</i>).</p>                               |
| <p style="text-align: center;">NOUN + NOUN</p> <p>(c) He works at a <b>shoe</b> store.</p> <p>(d) INCORRECT: <i>He works at a shoes store.</i></p>                               | <p>A noun that is used as an adjective is always in its singular form. In (c): the store sells shoes, but it is called a <i>shoe</i> (singular form) <i>store</i>.</p> |
| <p style="text-align: center;">ADJECTIVE + NOUN + NOUN</p> <p>(e) I bought an <b>expensive grammar</b> book.</p> <p>(f) INCORRECT: <i>I bought a grammar expensive book.</i></p> | <p>Both an adjective and a noun can modify a noun; the adjective comes first, the noun second.</p>   |



|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p style="text-align: center;">ADJECTIVE + NOUN</p> <p>(a) I bought some <b>beautiful</b> flowers.</p>  | <p>Adjectives describe nouns; they give information about nouns. See Chart 4-2 for a list of common adjectives.</p> <p>Adjectives can come in front of nouns, as in (a).</p>  |
| <p style="text-align: center;">BE + ADJECTIVE</p> <p>(b) The flowers <b>were</b> <b>beautiful.</b></p>  | <p>Adjectives can follow <b>be</b>, as in (b). The adjective describes the subject of the sentence. See Chart 1-6.</p>  |
| <p style="text-align: center;">LINKING VERB + ADJECTIVE</p> <p>(c) The flowers <b>looked</b> <b>beautiful.</b></p> <p>(d) The flowers <b>smelled</b> <b>good.</b></p> <p>(e) I <b>feel</b> <b>good.</b></p> <p>(f) Candy <b>tastes</b> <b>sweet.</b></p> <p>(g) That book <b>sounds</b> <b>interesting.</b></p> | <p>Adjectives can follow a few other verbs. These verbs are called “linking verbs.” The adjective describes the subject of the sentence.</p> <p>Common linking verbs are: <i>look, smell, feel, taste, and sound.</i></p> |

# ADJECTIVES - OPPOSITE

*Transform the following sentences as in the examples.*

Examples: a) This car is **fast**.

Yes. It is a **fast** car.

b) These books are **cheap**.

Yes. They are **cheap** books.

1. This chair is hard. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The man is old. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The woman is tall. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Those shoes are new. \_\_\_\_\_
5. This shirt is expensive. \_\_\_\_\_
6. This exercise is easy. \_\_\_\_\_
7. That boy is very clever. \_\_\_\_\_
8. These rooms are small. \_\_\_\_\_
9. That bottle is full. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The city is large. \_\_\_\_\_
11. That girl is intelligent. \_\_\_\_\_
12. The suitcases are heavy. \_\_\_\_\_
13. The man is very fat. \_\_\_\_\_
14. This man is rich. \_\_\_\_\_
15. That elephant is very large. \_\_\_\_\_
16. That room is very clean. \_\_\_\_\_
17. That car is old. \_\_\_\_\_
18. These dictionaries are cheap. \_\_\_\_\_
19. This question is very difficult. \_\_\_\_\_
20. This armchair is soft. \_\_\_\_\_
21. The armchair is comfortable. \_\_\_\_\_
22. These sentences are short. \_\_\_\_\_
23. These pictures are very nice. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Those animals are very dangerous. \_\_\_\_\_

# OPPOSITES of the ADJECTIVES

*Answer the following questions by using the opposites of the adjectives.*

Examples: a) Is John **rich**?

No, he isn't. He is **poor**.

b) Is that book **new**?

No, it isn't. It is **old**.

1. Are the streets **dirty**? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Are these men **young**? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Are these questions **difficult**? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Are those books **cheap**? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Are those bottles **full**? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Are those people **rude**? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Is Bill **strong**? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Is Mary **lucky**? \_\_\_\_\_
9. Is Mr. Smith **old**? \_\_\_\_\_
10. Is that book **useless**? \_\_\_\_\_
11. Is that chair **soft**? \_\_\_\_\_
12. Is that driver **careful**? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Is that girl **happy**? \_\_\_\_\_
14. Is that river **long**? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Is that road **narrow**? \_\_\_\_\_
16. Is that table **heavy**? \_\_\_\_\_
17. Is the food **bad**? \_\_\_\_\_
18. Is the girl **sad**? \_\_\_\_\_
19. Is the program **interesting**? \_\_\_\_\_
20. Is the soup **hot**? \_\_\_\_\_
21. Is the train **slow**? \_\_\_\_\_
22. Is the woman **tall**? \_\_\_\_\_
23. Is your brother **thin**? \_\_\_\_\_

# ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing (Vocabulary List)

*Fill in the blanks with the correct words.*

| VERB          | Adjectives ending-ing | Adjectives ending-ed |
|---------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. amaze      | _____                 | _____                |
| 2. amuse      | _____                 | _____                |
| 3. annoy      | _____                 | _____                |
| 4. astonish   | _____                 | _____                |
| 5. bore       | _____                 | _____                |
| 6. confuse    | _____                 | _____                |
| 7. depress    | _____                 | _____                |
| 8. disappoint | _____                 | _____                |
| 9. embarrass  | _____                 | _____                |
| 10. excite    | _____                 | _____                |
| 11. exhaust   | _____                 | _____                |
| 12. fascinate | _____                 | _____                |
| 13. horrify   | _____                 | _____                |
| 14. interest  | _____                 | _____                |
| 15. please    | _____                 | _____                |
| 16. shock     | _____                 | _____                |
| 17. surprise  | _____                 | _____                |
| 18. terrify   | _____                 | _____                |
| 19. tire      | _____                 | _____                |
| 20. worry     | _____                 | _____                |

# ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing

Choose the correct words.

Examples: Everyone finds the circus amusing \_\_. (/ amused)

The audience was bored \_\_. (boring / bored)

1. Mick's jokes are always\_\_ (boring / bored)

---

2. Basketball is an\_\_ game. (interesting / interested)

---

3. We were all \_\_ when we heard the explosion. (terrifying / terrified)

---

Do you  
easily get\_\_ while you are dancing? (embarrassing / embarrassed)

---

4. I can't do it; it is too\_\_ for me. (confusing / confused)

---

5. It was a really\_\_ work. (tiring / tired)

---

6. I am\_\_ to see you again. (surprising / surprised)

---

7. She felt\_\_ when I\_\_ at her. (excite) (look)

---

8. My deskmate sometimes\_\_ me\_\_ (make) (feel / bore)

---

9. I\_\_ quite \_\_ that he got the highest mark. (be) (surprise)

---

10. Is your life really so\_\_? (bore/bored)

---

11. I often visit art galleries. I\_\_ in art. (interest/interesting)

---

12. They were very\_\_ when they heard the news. (shock/shocked)

---

13. Getting low marks makes me\_\_ (depress/depressed)

---

14. Did you meet anyone\_\_ at the party? (amuse/amused)

---

15. I enjoyed the book. It was very interested / interesting.

---

16. Are you interested / interesting in art?

---

17. I thought the story was quite amused / amusing.

---

18. They were shocked / shocking when they heard the news.

---

19. We were all very worried / worrying when he didn't come home.

---

20. It was surprised / surprising that she didn't come to the meeting.

---

21. I usually find football rather bored / boring.

---

22. Are you frightened / frightening of spiders?

---

23. Noise pollution in crowded cities makes me\_\_ (depressing / depressed)

---

# ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing

Complete the sentences. Use adjectives formed by adding **-ING** or **-ED** to the words in brackets.

1. I find it quite - (embarrass) to talk in front of a group of people.

2. I think reading newspapers is . (depress)

3. I'm (interest) in all kinds of sport.

4. I find walking in the countryside very (relax)

5. I think learning a language is very (interest)

6. I get (annoy) when people smoke in restaurants.

7. I don't normally get (frighten) when I watch horror films.

8. I don't get (embarrass) very easily.

# ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing (WH questions)

Answer the questions.

1. What **bores** your mother most?

2. What kind of people do you think are always **tired**?

3. What makes you feel **fascinated**?

4. What is **amazing** to see in hospitals?

5. What is **embarrassing** for a student to do at school?

6. What made you feel **exhausted**?

7. What caused your teacher to get **worried**?

8. What is **tiring** for a housewife to do at home?

9. What caused your deskmate to get **disappointed**?

10. What **tires** you most?

11. What do you think about playing football?

12. What kind of job do you think is **boring**?

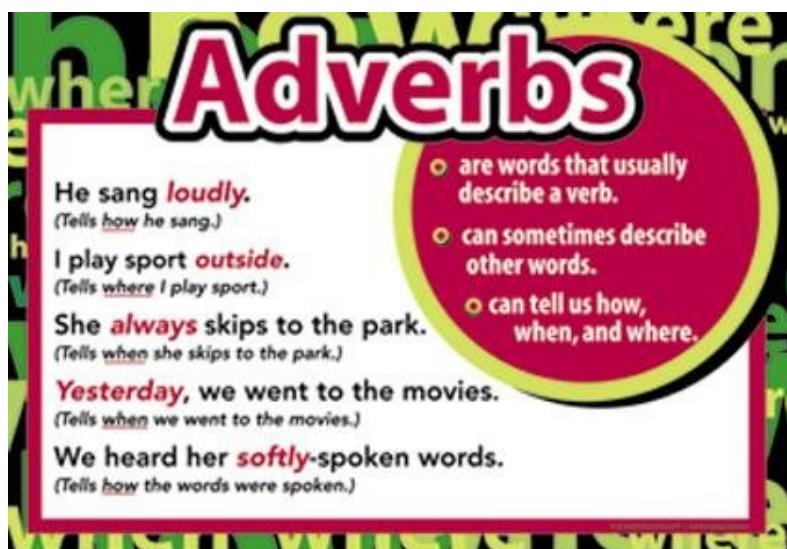
13. What makes you feel **annoyed**?

14. What kind of students **worries** the teachers most?

15. What **frightens** you?

16. What is the most **boring** thing for a student to do on holidays?

# ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS



|  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) Mary is an <b>intelligent</b> student.<br>(ADJECTIVE) (NOUN)   | Adjectives describe nouns. In grammar, we say that adjectives modify nouns. The word <i>modify</i> means "change a little." Adjectives give a little different meaning to a noun: <i>intelligent student, lazy student, good student</i> . Examples of adjectives: <i>young, old, rich, poor, beautiful, brown, French, modern</i> .  |
| (b) The <b>hungry</b> children ate fruit.<br>(ADJECTIVE)(NOUN)   |   |
| (c) I saw some <b>beautiful</b> pictures.<br><b>INCORRECT:</b> <i>beautifuls pictures</i>  | An adjective is neither singular nor plural. A final <i>-s</i> is never added to an adjective.  |
| (a) He walks <b>quickly</b> .<br>(ADVERB)  | Adverbs modify verbs. Often they answer the question " <i>How?</i> " In (a): <i>How does he walk?</i> Answer: <i>Quickly</i> .  |
| (b) She opened the door <b>quietly</b> .<br>(ADVERB)   | Adverbs are often formed by adding <i>-ly</i> to an adjective.<br><i>adjective: quick<br/>adverb: quickly</i>   |
| (c) I am <b>extremely</b> happy.<br>(ADVERB) (ADJECTIVE)   | Adverbs are also used to modify adjectives, i.e., to give information about adjectives, as in (c).  |
| (d) Ann will come <b>tomorrow</b> .<br>(ADVERB)  | Adverbs are also used to express time or frequency. Examples: <i>tomorrow, today, yesterday, soon, never, usually, always, yet</i> .  |
| <b>MIDSENTENCE ADVERBS</b><br>(e) Ann <b>always</b> comes on time.<br>(f) Ann is <b>always</b> on time.<br>(g) Ann <b>has always</b> come on time.<br><br>(h) <i>Does she always come on time?</i>       | Some adverbs may occur in the middle of a sentence. Midsentence adverbs have usual positions; they<br>(1) come in front of simple present and simple past verbs (except <i>be</i> ), as in (e);<br>(2) follow <i>be</i> (simple present and simple past), as in (f);<br>(3) come between a helping verb and a main verb, as in (g).<br>In a question, a midsentence adverb comes directly after the subject, as in (h). |
| <b>COMMON MIDSentence ADVERBS</b><br><i>ever, always, usually, often, frequently, generally, sometimes, occasionally, seldom, rarely, hardly ever, never, not ever, already, finally, just, probably</i> |   |

# ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS

Write what the underlined word is; adjective or adverb:

Example: Fast runners win races. ..... **adjective** .....

1. Ann is very **sad**. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Father is very **busy** in his office. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He runs **fast**. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Mathematics is **difficult**. \_\_\_\_\_
5. She behaved **rudely** to her boss. \_\_\_\_\_
6. She plays the piano **beautifully**. \_\_\_\_\_
7. She's a **good** typist. \_\_\_\_\_
8. She's a **pretty** girl. \_\_\_\_\_
9. The clowns are very **funny**. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The doctor arrived **immediately**. \_\_\_\_\_
11. You've done **well** in your test. \_\_\_\_\_

# ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS

Write the correct item: adjective or adverb

Example: He left the room **quiet** / quietly.

1. Jane works **hard** / **hardly**. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Mice move **quiet** / **quietly**. \_\_\_\_\_
3. He's a very **nice** / **nicely** man. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The sun is shining **bright** / **brightly**. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Smoking is **bad** / **badly** for your health. \_\_\_\_\_
6. She behaves very **good** / **well**. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He always dresses **smart** / **smartly**. \_\_\_\_\_
8. He shouted **angry** / **angrily** at me. \_\_\_\_\_
9. This chair is **comfortable** / **comfortably**. \_\_\_\_\_
10. He smiled **sad** / **sadly**. \_\_\_\_\_
11. This exercise is **easy** / **easily**. \_\_\_\_\_
12. These people are speaking **quiet** / **quietly**. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Mr. Brown can speak English **good** / **well**. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Tigers are **brave** / **bravely** animals. \_\_\_\_\_
15. The footballer is **tired** / **tiredly**. \_\_\_\_\_

16. Cheetahs run **quick** / **quickly**.

17. She is lifting the weight **easy** / **easily**.

18. The children are playing **happy** / **happily**.

19. Tony is a **good** / **well** skier.

20. You drive very **slow** / **slowly**.

21. He always does his homework **careful/carefully**.

22. He is a very **careful/carefully** student.

23. Come **quick/quickly**. We need your help.

24. You should drive more **slow/slowly** along this road.

25. The old man walks very **slow/slowly**.

26. Helen is a very **slow/slowly** student.

27. Her brother, on the other hand, learns **rapid/rapidly**.

28. Mr. Gonzales has a **permanent/permanently** visa.

29. He hopes to remain in this country **permanent/permanently**.

30. This is an **easy / easily** exercise.

31. I can do all of these exercises **easy / easily**.

32. Helen works very **hard / hardly** in her new job.

33. They are both **serious /seriously** students.

34. They both study English very **serious /seriously**.

35. I agree with you **complete/completely** in that matter.

36. This apple is very **soft/softly**.

37. She always speaks **soft/softly** to the child.

38. Helen is a **beautiful/beautifully** girl.

39. Her sister plays the violin **beautiful/beautifully**.

# ADJECTIVES - QUESTIONS

Answer these questions as in the example.

**Example:** Why didn't you dance? (**tired**)  
Because I was too **tired**.

1. Why didn't you come on the Ghost Train? (**scared**)

---

2. Why didn't you watch the film? (**boring**)

---

3. Why didn't you do your homework? (**difficult**)

---

4. Why didn't you get on the bus? (**full**)

---

5. Why didn't you come to the disco? (**late**)

---

6. Why didn't you come to the lesson? (**early**)

---

7. Why didn't you swim? (**cold**)

---

8. Why didn't you read the book? (**difficult**)

---

# ADJECTIVES and ADVERBS

Respond as in the example.

Examples: Ali is a careful worker. Yes, he works **carefully**.  
They are noisy workers. Yes, they work **noisily**.

1. Ali is a regular worker. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Bill is a slow worker. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Bob is a bad actor. \_\_\_\_\_
4. George is a fast driver. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Hasan is a serious worker. \_\_\_\_\_
6. He is a careful driver. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He is a fast painter. \_\_\_\_\_
8. He is a good teacher. \_\_\_\_\_
9. He is a good writer. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Mary is a careless typist. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Mehmet is a careful driver. \_\_\_\_\_
12. My brother is a fast runner. \_\_\_\_\_
13. My mother is a good cook. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Peter is a bad player. \_\_\_\_\_
15. She is a fast swimmer. \_\_\_\_\_
16. She is a polite speaker. \_\_\_\_\_
17. She is a quick typist. \_\_\_\_\_
18. The twins are hard workers. \_\_\_\_\_
19. They are busy workers. \_\_\_\_\_
20. They are dangerous drivers. \_\_\_\_\_
21. They are heavy smokers. \_\_\_\_\_
22. They are quiet workers. \_\_\_\_\_
23. We are hard workers. \_\_\_\_\_
24. Zeynep is a fluent speaker. \_\_\_\_\_

# ADJECTIVES and ADVERBS

Rewrite the following sentences changing the adjectives in brackets to adverbs.

Examples: My brother walks (slow). My brother walks slowly.  
They work (serious). They work seriously.

1. Dogs run (fast). \_\_\_\_\_
2. He acts (responsible). \_\_\_\_\_
3. He behaves (gentle) towards everybody. \_\_\_\_\_
4. He changes his mind (sudden). \_\_\_\_\_
5. He gets angry (easy). \_\_\_\_\_
6. He goes to school (unwilling). \_\_\_\_\_
7. He listens to people (patient). \_\_\_\_\_
8. He reacts (immediate). \_\_\_\_\_
9. He sings (beautiful). \_\_\_\_\_
10. He speaks (fluent). \_\_\_\_\_
11. He walks (quick). \_\_\_\_\_
12. He watches everybody (suspicious). \_\_\_\_\_
13. I always get up (early). \_\_\_\_\_
14. I drive (dangerous). \_\_\_\_\_
15. It is raining (heavy). \_\_\_\_\_
16. My brother types (bad). \_\_\_\_\_
17. My little brother plays (noisy). \_\_\_\_\_
18. She cooks (good). \_\_\_\_\_
19. She drives (careful). \_\_\_\_\_
20. She sometimes gets up (late). \_\_\_\_\_
21. She speaks (careless). \_\_\_\_\_
22. The teacher speaks (slow). \_\_\_\_\_
23. They live (happy). \_\_\_\_\_
24. They work (hard). \_\_\_\_\_

# ADJECTIVES and ADVERBS

*Rewrite the following sentences using the correct forms of the adjectives in brackets.*

**Examples:** a) He types (**bad**). He types **badly**.  
b) She is a (**good**) cook. She is a **good** cook.

1. He is a very (**intelligent**) student.

2. He is a (**careless**) worker.

3. They play (**fast**).

4. The teacher always asks (**difficult**) questions.

5. All answers the questions (**easy**).

6. My brother walks very (**quick**).

7. The grocer speaks (**polite**).

8. This chair is very (**comfortable**).

That waiter is very (**rude**).

9. He always behaves (**respectful**).

10. Mr. Smith lives (**comfortable**).

11. He does his homework (**careful**).

12. They are talking (**loud**).

13. They are very (**serious**) students.

14. She plays the piano (**good**).

15. He does everything (**successful**).

16. They work (**rapid**).

17. The MP speaks (**fluent**).

18. He answers the questions (**honest**).

19. The answers are all (**incorrect**).

20. This animal is very (**dangerous**).

21. The children are playing (**noisy**).

22. He drives (**careless**).

23. She works (**hard**).

# ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS

Complete these sentences:

**Example:** A: There was some **heavy** rain last night.

B: Yes, it rained very heavily.

1. A: Aren't the children **quiet**!

B: Yes, they're working very \_\_\_\_\_

2. A: James has a **loud** voice.

B: Yes, he always talks very \_\_\_\_\_

3. A: Isn't the teacher **angry**!

B: Yes, he's shouting very \_\_\_\_\_

4. A: Angela's very **happy** today!

B: Yes, she's laughing very \_\_\_\_\_

5. A: The telephone rang in the middle of the night. Nick was very **sleepy**.

B: He answered it very \_\_\_\_\_

6. A: Kate likes playing **slow** music.

B: Yes, she's playing this piece very \_\_\_\_\_

# ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing (WH questions)

*Ask questions.*

Example: She thinks it is a boring job. \_\_\_\_\_ What does she think about the job? \_\_\_\_\_

1. I felt disappointed after I heard the news.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The difficult problem confused Tim.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Frightened domestic animals sometimes get out of control.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Kate's complaints annoy us.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Flowers and trees are always an interesting sight in buildings.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. I am interested in collecting napkins.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. He felt tired after school.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Adjectives - (WH questions)

Answer these questions as in the example.

Example: Why didn't you dance? (**tired**)

Because I was too **tired**.

9. Why didn't you come on the Ghost Train? (**scared**)  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Why didn't you watch the film? (**boring**)  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Why didn't you do your homework? (**difficult**)  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Why didn't you get on the bus? (**full**)  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Why didn't you come to the disco? (**late**)  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Why didn't you come to the lesson? (**early**)  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Why didn't you swim? (**cold**)  
\_\_\_\_\_

# COMPARATIVE & SUPERLATIVE

|  |   |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|
| <p>Mary is 25 years old.<br/>John is 20 years old.</p> <p>(a) Mary is <b>older than</b> John.</p> <p>(b) Health is <b>more important than</b> money.</p> <p>(c) INCORRECT: <i>Mary is more old than John.</i></p> <p>(d) INCORRECT: <i>Health is importanter than money.</i></p> | <p>When we use adjectives (e.g., <i>old, important</i>) to compare two people or two things, the adjectives have special forms:<br/>In (a): we add <b>-er</b> to an adjective, OR<br/>In (b): we use <b>more</b> in front of an adjective.<br/>The use of <b>-er</b> or <b>more</b> is called the COMPARATIVE FORM.</p> |  |  |
|  | <p>Notice in the examples: <b>than</b> follows the comparative form: <i>older than, more important than.</i></p>  |  |  |
| ADJECTIVES WITH ONE SYLLABLE   | ADJECTIVE<br><i>old</i><br><i>cheap</i><br><i>big</i>   | COMPARATIVE<br><i>older</i><br><i>cheaper</i><br><i>bigger</i>         | Add <b>-er</b> to one-syllable adjectives.   |
|  |   |  | Spelling note: if an adjective ends in one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant: <i>big-bigger, fat-fatter, thin-thinner, hot-hotter.</i> |
| ADJECTIVES THAT END IN <b>-Y</b>   | <i>pretty</i><br><i>funny</i>   | <i>prettier</i><br><i>funnier</i>                                      | If an adjective ends in <b>-y</b> , change the <b>-y</b> to <b>i</b> and add <b>-er</b> .  |
| ADJECTIVES WITH TWO OR MORE SYLLABLES  | <i>famous</i><br><i>important</i><br><i>interesting</i>   | <i>more famous</i><br><i>more important</i><br><i>more interesting</i> | Use <b>more</b> in front of adjectives that have two or more syllables (except adjectives that end in <b>-y</b> ).                                 |
| IRREGULAR COMPARATIVE FORMS  | <i>good</i><br><i>bad</i><br><i>far</i>   | <i>better</i><br><i>worse</i><br><i>farther/further</i>                | The comparative forms of <b>good, bad</b> , and <b>far</b> are irregular.  |

## SUPERLATIVE

|   |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| <p>(a) COMPARATIVE:<br/>My thumb is <b>shorter than</b> my index finger.</p> <p>(b) SUPERLATIVE:<br/>My hand has five fingers. My thumb is <b>the shortest</b> (finger) of all.</p> | <p>The comparative (<b>-er/more</b>) compares two things or people.<br/>The superlative (<b>-er/most</b>) compares three or more things or people.</p> |  |  |
| ADJECTIVES WITH ONE SYLLABLE  | ADJECTIVE<br><i>old</i><br><i>big</i>  | COMPARATIVE<br><i>older (than)</i><br><i>bigger (than)</i>                   | SUPERLATIVE<br><i>the oldest (of all)</i><br><i>the biggest (of all)</i>                       |
| ADJECTIVES THAT END IN <b>-Y</b>  | <i>pretty</i><br><i>easy</i>   | <i>prettier (than)</i><br><i>easier (than)</i>                               | <i>the prettiest (of all)</i><br><i>the easiest (of all)</i>                                   |
| ADJECTIVES WITH TWO OR MORE SYLLABLES   | <i>expensive</i><br><i>important</i>   | <i>more expensive (than)</i><br><i>more important (than)</i>                 | <i>the most expensive (of all)</i><br><i>the most important (of all)</i>                       |
| IRREGULAR FORMS   | <i>good</i><br><i>bad</i><br><i>far</i>  | <i>better (than)</i><br><i>worse (than)</i><br><i>farther/further (than)</i> | <i>the best (of all)</i><br><i>the worst (of all)</i><br><i>the farthest/furthest (of all)</i> |

# COMPARATIVE & SUPERLATIVE

| adjective     | comparative     | superlative         |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| Example :     |                 |                     |
| bad           | -----worse----- | -----the worst----- |
| 1. boring     | -----           | -----               |
| 2. careful    | -----           | -----               |
| 3. careless   | -----           | -----               |
| 4. cheap      | -----           | -----               |
| 5. clever     | -----           | -----               |
| 6. cold       | -----           | -----               |
| 7. cool       | -----           | -----               |
| 8. dark       | -----           | -----               |
| 9. dead       | -----           | -----               |
| 10. deep      | -----           | -----               |
| 11. difficult | -----           | -----               |
| 12. dry       | -----           | -----               |
| 13. early     | -----           | -----               |
| 14. easy      | -----           | -----               |
| 15. expensive | -----           | -----               |
| 16. far       | -----           | -----               |
| 17. far       | -----           | (distance)          |
| 18. far       | -----           | (more, additional)  |
| 19. fast      | -----           | -----               |
| 20. foolish   | -----           | -----               |
| 21. good      | -----           | -----               |
| 22. happy     | -----           | -----               |
| 23. hard      | -----           | -----               |
| 24. healthy   | -----           | -----               |
| 25. high      | -----           | -----               |
| 26. hot       | -----           | -----               |
| 27. last      | -----           | -----               |
| 28. late      | -----           | -----               |
| 29. light     | -----           | -----               |
| 30. little    | -----           | -----               |
| 31. low       | -----           | -----               |
| 32. many      | -----           | -----               |
| 33. much      | -----           | -----               |
| 34. narrow    | -----           | -----               |
| 35. near      | -----           | -----               |
| 36. new       | -----           | -----               |

|             |       |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|
| 37. old     | ----- | ----- |
| 38. present | ----- | ----- |
| 39. pretty  | ----- | ----- |
| 40. rich    | ----- | ----- |
| 41. shy     | ----- | ----- |
| 42. sick    | ----- | ----- |
| 43. slow    | ----- | ----- |
| 44. soft    | ----- | ----- |
| 45. strong  | ----- | ----- |
| 46. thick   | ----- | ----- |
| 47. thin    | ----- | ----- |
| 48. warm    | ----- | ----- |
| 49. weak    | ----- | ----- |
| 50. well    | ----- | ----- |
| 51. wet     | ----- | ----- |
| 52. wise    | ----- | ----- |
| 53. young   | ----- | ----- |

# COMPARATIVE - Adjective

Make comparative sentences as in the example.

**Example:** English – easy – Japanese English is easier than Japanese.  
My car – fast - your car My car is faster than your car.

1. Paris – big – Basra

2. A plane – fast - a car

3. Ali – tall – Mehmet

4. Science – easy – maths

5. Russia – large – China

6. A newspaper – cheap - a magazine

7. Michael – short – Brian

8. Physics – hard – chemistry

9. Our radio – old - our TV set

10. A cat – small – a dog

11. A table – heavy - a chair

12. Our teacher – young – yours

13. The Mississippi – long - the Nile

14. This road – wide - that road

15. Our classroom – clean – yours

16. That boxer – strong - the champion

17. Rome – warm – Ankara

18. My brother – short – me

19. A new car – good - an old one

20. An armchair – soft - a chair

21. Thirst – bad – hunger

22. I – fat – you

23. A chair – light - a table

24. My brother – thin - my sister

# COMPARATIVE – (More) Adjectives

Make comparative sentences as in the example.

Examples: football – exciting – volleyball  
Ali – respectful - his brother

Football is more exciting than volleyball.  
Ali is more respectful than his brother.

1. football – interesting – basketball

2. Japanese – difficult – English

3. radio – boring – television

4. an armchair – comfortable - a chair

5. a motorbike – expensive - a bike

6. Tom – intelligent – George

7. your story – believable - his story

8. a Mercedes – beautiful - a Renault

9. Bill – careful – Bob

10. gold – valuable – silver

11. morality – important – economy

12. Osman – careless - his brother

13. boxing – dangerous – wrestling

14. a – mule stubborn – a goat

15. a Volkswagen – economical - a Ford

16. this book – useful - that one

17. Tom – experienced – George

18. drinking – harmful – smoking

19. he – generous - his father

20. Mary – successful – Alice

21. She – careless - her brother

22. Ali – impolite – Veli

23. He – impatient - his father

24. a calculator – practical - an abacus

# COMPARATIVE (Adjective) –

## One and more than one syllable adjectives

Complete the sentences. Use a COMPARATIVE.

Examples: Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a bigger one.  
My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something more interesting.

1. You're not very tall. Your brother is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. David doesn't work very hard. I work \_\_\_\_\_.
3. My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Your plan isn't very good. My plan is \_\_\_\_\_.
5. These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are \_\_\_\_\_.
6. My bag isn't very heavy. Your bag is \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I am not very interested in art. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ in history.
8. It isn't very warm today. It was \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
9. These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Britain isn't very big. France is \_\_\_\_\_.
11. London isn't very beautiful. Paris is \_\_\_\_\_.
12. This knife isn't very sharp. Have you very got a \_\_\_\_\_ one ?
13. People today aren't very polite. In the past they were \_\_\_\_\_.

# COMPARATIVE - ADVERBS

|   |  |  |   |
|---|--|--|---|
| (a) Kim speaks <b>more fluently</b> than Ali (does).<br>(b) Anna speaks <b>the most fluently of all</b> . | COMPARATIVE<br><b>more fluently</b><br><b>more slowly</b><br><b>more quickly</b> | SUPERLATIVE<br><b>the most fluently</b><br><b>the most slowly</b><br><b>the most quickly</b> | Use <b>more</b> and <b>most</b> with adverbs that end in <b>-ly</b> .*                  |
| (c) Mike worked <b>harder than</b> Sam (did).<br>(d) Sue worked <b>the hardest of all</b> .               | <b>harder</b><br><b>faster</b><br><b>earlier</b><br><b>later</b>                 | <b>the hardest</b><br><b>the fastest</b><br><b>the earliest</b><br><b>the latest</b>         | Use <b>-er</b> and <b>-est</b> with irregular adverbs: <b>hard, fast, early, late</b> . |
| (e) Rosa writes <b>better than</b> I do.<br>(f) Kim writes <b>the best of all</b> .                       | <b>better</b>  | <b>the best</b>  | <b>Better</b> and <b>best</b> are forms of the adverb <b>well</b> .                     |

\*Exception: *early-earlier-earliest*.

Complete the sentences. Use the COMPARATIVE form of the adverbs in parentheses.

1. Sandra reads **(quickly)** her best friend.
2. John plays football **(well)** anyone else in the school team.
3. The fans of the football team yelled **(widely)** the coach of their team.
4. I want to live **(comfortably)** I used to
5. The police officer responded to my questions **(politely)** the police detective
6. You must touch a baby **(gently)** you touch anyone else.

7. I did my homework **(excellently)** anyone else did.

8. Roger spends money **(generously)** Russell.

9. Why don't you talk **(openly)**? What do you mean?

10. The people in the European countries live **(expensively)** the people in the middle Asia

11. I used to dance **(gracefully)** I do now.

12. Jane plays the piano **(beautifully)** Pamela.

13. Arnold drives **(carefully)** than I do.

14. Tom writes **(well)** the anyone else in the class.

15. My father laughs **(loudly)** that anyone else I know.

16. Samantha cleans the house, **(thoroughly)** than her brother.

17. Martin talks to customers **(patiently)** than Alison.

18. The team played **(badly)** today than yesterday.

19. Randy works **(hard)** than Peter in mathematics.

20. The patient is doing **(well)** today after the operation.

21. The car is running **(smoothly)** after the tune-up.

22. Sam does things **(efficiently)** than Jenny.

23. My CD player works **(excellently)** my cassette player.

## COMPARATIVE – Adjectives - Adverbs

Make sentences using **COMPARATIVE** form of the ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS.

1. Timmy / drive / dangerously / Clara / yesterday.

2. Sam / get up / late / I / on Sundays.

3. Sonia / study / hard / Boris / for the exam / last week.

4. The new waiter / serve / quickly / the old one.

5. Mrs. Clam / explain the topic / clearly / Mr. Black / yesterday.

6. Russell / eat / a lot / he used to.

7. I / get up / early / usual / tomorrow.

8. Brian / shoot basket / frequently / he used to / nowadays.

9. Edward / write / neatly / I.

# SUPERLATIVE (Adjective)

## One and more than one syllable adjectives

Rewrite the following sentences using the superlative forms of the adjectives in brackets.

Examples: Mehmet is (fat) student in our class. Mehmet is the fattest student in our class.

This is (important) rule of all. This is the most important rule of all.

1. Mt Everest is (high) mountain in the world.

2. Mississippi is (long) river in the world.

3. The USSR is (large) country in the world.

4. Japanese is (difficult) language of all.

5. This is (interesting) film I have ever seen.

6. Tom is (tall) of all.

7. Concorde is (fast) plane of all.

8. He is (intelligent) person I have ever met.

9. Esperanto is (easy) language in the world.

10. He is (fat) man in the world.

11. She is (thin) woman in the world.

12. This is (expensive) car I have ever driven.

13. This is (delicious) food I have ever eaten.

14. Who is (short) man in the world?

15. Bill is (good) driver in our town.

16. Mehmet is (fast) runner of all.

17. This is (bad) book I have ever read.

18. What is (dangerous) sport in the world?

19. Richard is (lazy) of all.

20. Who is (popular) person in the world?

21. Ali is (generous) person I know.

22. Where is (near) post office?

23. This is (exciting) game I have ever watched.

24. "The Kite" is (good) film I have seen for years.

25. This hotel is (expensive) one I have ever stayed in.

26. Anar is (clever) boy in his class.

27. Seymur is (dangerous) man in Litvanya.

28. Mike (happy) student in our class.

29. Who is (generous) student in prep C.?

30. This is (comfortable) seat here.

31. Who is (tall) girl in this class?

32. This is (valuable) painting in the exhibition.

33. Who has (little) money?

34. I have (much) money.

35. Who is (tall) man in the world?

## COMPARATIVE or SUPERLATIVE (Adjective)

Write the *comparative* or *superlative* form of the adjective in the parentheses. Rewrite the sentences.

1. "Contact" is (interesting) than "Forest Gump".

2. Kebab are (delicious) than hamburgers.

3. Table tennis is (easy) than tennis but volleyball is the (easy)

4. "Forest Gump" is the . (interesting) film I have ever seen.

5. This is the (good) chocolate cake I have ever eaten.

6. June is (hot) than April, but July is the (hot).

7. French is (difficult) than English, but Chinese is the (difficult) language.

8. Fiction films are \_\_\_\_\_ as western films. (boring)

9. The United States are (difficult) than French, but Russia is the (large)

10. Rapundze has got (long) hair of all the story characters.

11. A: People think Dracula was (ugly) creature in the film industry. But I think Frankenstein was even (ugly) Dracula.

B: Who's (beautiful)?

A: I don't know!

12. Which is (**short**) day of the year?

---

13. Tag Heuer and Quantum are (**expensive**) sport watch brands.

---

14. Don't wear that skirt, it's very short. In fact, it is, (**short**) skirt in your cupboard.

---

15. Superticket is a travel company and it offers people cheap tickets. I bought my ticket from them and it was , (**cheap**) yours.

---

16. This chair is, (**comfortable**) chair in this shop!

---

17. This is, (**easy**) exercise in this book.

---

18. Who is, (**rich**) man in the world?

---

19. Let's take Manuel's car. His car is, (**big**) than all the other cars.

---

20. I think Sofia's car is, (**big**) of all.

No, I think Sofia's car is, (**small**) than Manuel's.

Maybe, but Sofia's car runs, (**fast**) than Manule's car.

---

---

---

21. That's because Manule's car is, (**old**) than Sofia's car.

---

22. Who walks (**fast**) in your family?

---

23. Who lives (**far**) from your school among your friends?

---

24. Did you watch (**late**) movie of Brad Pit?

---

25. I earn (**much**) my brother.

---

26. Pamela sings (**beautifully**) the girls in the choir.

---

27. My father drives (**carelessly**) of my uncles.

---

28. Margaret felt much (**well**) after the operation.

---

29. All the players player beautifully, but Patrick played (**beautifully**)

---

30. France won the world cup this year, because they played , (**beautifully**) football (**intelligently**)

---

31. John behaved very strangely at the party, but Sam behaved (**strangely**) the others.

---

# ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS

Rewrite the following sentences using the correct forms of the adjectives in brackets.

Example: I am (tall) than that boy. I am taller than that boy.  
He drives very (dangerous). He drives very **dangerously**.

1. My mother is a (good) cook. She cooks (good).  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. My brother runs (fast) than me.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. All is a (careless) driver.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The new secretary types (good) but the old one typed (good) than her.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Have you got a (beautiful) dress than that?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Can you walk as (quick) as him?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. He is as (quick) as you.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. My grandpa is (old) than my grandma.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. He is a (fast) worker. He works (fast).  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. He cooks (bad) but I cook (bad) than him.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. He works (hard) of the three.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. This one is too (big) for me. I want a (small) one.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Nile is (long) river in Egypt.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. I made (few) mistakes than you.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. She earned (little) money than her brother.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. He works (much) than his colleague.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. He is (old) than I expected.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. This armchair is (comfortable) than that one.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. She doesn't prepare her homework as (careful) as she used to.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. Who is (famous) man in the world?  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. He drives (dangerous) of all.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. It wasn't as (expensive) as I thought.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. She typed (careful) of all.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. He is (tall) man I have ever seen.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# QUESTIONS & SHORT ANSWERS

*Respond as in the example.*

Example: He was in Berlin. (Madrid) Was he in Berlin? No, he wasn't. Where was he? He was in Madrid.  
The play was boring. (interesting) Was the play boring? No, it wasn't. How was it? It was interesting.

1. She was a cook last year. (secretary)

2. The weather was warm yesterday. (cool)

3. It was a plane. (helicopter)

4. It was Ali. (Mehmet)

5. They were in Antalya last summer. (Burdur)

6. The car was new. (a bit old)

7. The workers were outside the factory. (inside)

8. He was late because of the traffic. (fog)

9. The students were lazy. (studious)

10. The questions were difficult. (easy)

11. He was the Prime Minister. (the President)

12. It was a video cassette. (audio cassette)

13. They were at home. (at work)

14. She was tall. (short)

15. The cat under the table. (chair)

16. He was in Britain. (France)

17. They were happy. (sad)

18. He was ill last week. (fine)

19. The meeting was on Wednesday. (Tuesday)

20. The football match was at two o'clock. (three)

21. He was in Germany five years ago. (France)

22. The dictionary was on the desk. (in the bookcase)

23. The door was closed. (open)

24. The suitcases were heavy. (light)

# SIMPLE PAST TENSE

## SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Regular Verbs) - ed

|                                 |   |   |   |                               |     |     |    |    |    |      |
|---------------------------------|---|---|---|-------------------------------|-----|-----|----|----|----|------|
| SIMPLE PRESENT:<br>SIMPLE PAST: | (a) I <b>walk</b> to school <b>every day.</b><br>(b) I <b>walked</b> to school <b>yesterday.</b>      | verb + <b>-ed</b> = the simple past tense   |   |                               |     |     |    |    |    |      |
| SIMPLE PRESENT:<br>SIMPLE PAST: | (c) Ann <b>walks</b> to school <b>every day.</b><br>(d) Ann <b>walked</b> to school <b>yesterday.</b> | <table><tr><td>I</td><td rowspan="7" style="vertical-align: middle; text-align: center;">+ walked (verb + <b>-ed</b>)</td></tr><tr><td>you</td></tr><tr><td>she</td></tr><tr><td>he</td></tr><tr><td>it</td></tr><tr><td>we</td></tr><tr><td>they</td></tr></table> | I | + walked (verb + <b>-ed</b> ) | you | she | he | it | we | they |
| I                               | + walked (verb + <b>-ed</b> )   |   |   |                               |     |     |    |    |    |      |
| you                             |   |   |   |                               |     |     |    |    |    |      |
| she                             |   |   |   |                               |     |     |    |    |    |      |
| he                              |   |   |   |                               |     |     |    |    |    |      |
| it                              |   |   |   |                               |     |     |    |    |    |      |
| we                              |   |   |   |                               |     |     |    |    |    |      |
| they                            |   |   |   |                               |     |     |    |    |    |      |

Change the following sentences to simple past tense. (All of the **-ed** endings in this exercise are pronounced /t/.)

Examples: I wash my face. I washed my face.  
He passes quickly. He passed quickly.

1. They help their teacher. \_\_\_\_\_
2. We work in a factory. \_\_\_\_\_
3. They laugh a lot. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I watch TV. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I practice my English. \_\_\_\_\_
6. She types the letters. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He walks in the park. \_\_\_\_\_
8. The dogs bark loudly. \_\_\_\_\_
9. He smokes heavily. \_\_\_\_\_
10. They ask questions. \_\_\_\_\_
11. He locks the door. \_\_\_\_\_
12. She looks at her watch. \_\_\_\_\_
13. They kidnap children. \_\_\_\_\_
14. I brush my teeth. \_\_\_\_\_
15. He coughs a lot. \_\_\_\_\_
16. They discuss politics. \_\_\_\_\_
17. He hopes to see you. \_\_\_\_\_
18. She talks a lot. \_\_\_\_\_
19. He drops everything. \_\_\_\_\_
20. He relaxes in the evening. \_\_\_\_\_
21. She cooks delicious meals. \_\_\_\_\_
22. The program finishes at 11 o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_
23. They publish new books. \_\_\_\_\_
24. The bus stops at the bus stop. \_\_\_\_\_

# **SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Regular Verbs – Question & Negative Forms)**

*Change the sentences above to question and answer in the negative.*

**Example:** I **wash** my face. **Did you wash your face? No, I didn't wash my face.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_
16. \_\_\_\_\_
17. \_\_\_\_\_
18. \_\_\_\_\_
19. \_\_\_\_\_
20. \_\_\_\_\_
21. \_\_\_\_\_
22. \_\_\_\_\_
23. \_\_\_\_\_
24. \_\_\_\_\_

# **SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Regular Verbs – From Simple Present Tense to Simple Past)**

*Change the following sentences to simple past tense. (All of the -ed endings in this exercise are pronounced /id/.)*

**Examples:** He wants a new car. He **wanted** a new car.  
They plant flowers. They **planted** flowers.

**1.** The lesson starts at 8.30.

---

**2.** He invites his friends to dinner.

---

**3.** I post the letters in the morning.

---

**4.** He mends shoes.

---

**5.** I need a lot of money.

---

**6.** He paints the house.

---

**7.** They repeat after the teacher.

---

**8.** The plane lands at 5 o'clock.

---

**9.** He reports the accidents.

---

**10.** I collect stamps.

---

**11.** She dusts the tables.

---

**12.** He intends to stay for a month.

---

**13.** He expects to find it.

---

**14.** He trusts me.

---

**15.** They invent stories.

---

**16.** He recommends good hotels.

---

**17.** He interrupts us.

---

**18.** He shouts at his son.

---

**19.** He adds up figures.

---

**20.** He reminds me the dates.

---

**21.** She decorates the houses.

---

**22.** He waits for us.

---

**23.** He accepts her gifts.

# SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Irregular Verbs)

Change the following sentences to simple past tense.

Examples: I sleep well.

I slept well.

She speaks French.

She spoke French.

1. He leaves home at 7 o'clock.

2. I have breakfast at 7.30.

3. He sweeps the rooms.

4. He goes to work by bus.

5. I eat lunch at 12 o'clock.

6. She sends letters.

7. He builds houses.

8. We spend a lot of money.

9. I run in the morning.

10. Work begins at 9 o'clock.

11. He speaks fluently.

12. He steals things.

13. She writes letters.

14. They win the games.

15. I read a lot.

16. I lose my pen.

17. He sings nice songs.

18. He shuts the doors.

19. He sees me.

20. They choose the presents.

21. The wind blows hard.

22. I catch the 8.10 train.

23. He does his homework.

24. He feels ill.

# SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Yes- No Question / Negative)

| DID + SUBJECT + MAIN VERB                         | SHORT ANSWER + (LONG ANSWER)  |
|---|---|
| (a) <b>Did</b> <b>Mary</b> <b>walk</b> to school? | → <b>Yes, she did.</b> (She walked to school.)<br>→ <b>No, she didn't.</b> (She didn't walk to school.) |
| (b) <b>Did</b> <b>you</b> <b>come</b> to class?   | → <b>Yes, I did.</b> (I came to class.)<br>→ <b>No, I didn't.</b> (I didn't come to class.)             |

Change the sentences **above** to question and answer in the negative.

Examples: I sleep well. Did you sleep well? No, I didn't sleep well.  
 She speaks French Did she speak French? No, she didn't speak French.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_
16. \_\_\_\_\_
17. \_\_\_\_\_
18. \_\_\_\_\_
19. \_\_\_\_\_
20. \_\_\_\_\_
21. \_\_\_\_\_
22. \_\_\_\_\_
23. \_\_\_\_\_
24. \_\_\_\_\_

# SIMPLE PAST TENSE (WH Questions)

Ask an "or" question with the given prompts in the past tense. Then give an affirmative answer for the first item and a negative answer for the second one.

**Example:** he - buy a car - a bicycle Did he buy a car or a bicycle?  
He bought a car. He didn't buy a bicycle.

1. you - drink tea - coffee.

---

2. they - go to Syria - Iran

---

3. she - read a magazine - a newspaper

---

4. he - drive a car - a bus.

---

5. the cat - eat the fish - the meat

---

6. the children - play football - basketball.

---

7. she - learn French - German.

---

8. we - leave home at 8 - 9

---

9. he - speak Persian – Arabic

---

10. she - write a letter – postcard

---

11. he - walk quickly – slowly

---

12. they - travel by plane - train.

---

13. the lecture - begin at 3 - 4.30

---

**14.** he - bring a book - a dictionary

---

---

**15.** she - give you a pen - a pencil

---

---

**16.** they - paint the walls – doors

---

---

**17.** she - sing well – badly

---

---

**18.** you - meet at the station – airport

---

---

**19.** the dog - bite your arm – leg

---

---

**20.** the car - hit the tree - the lamp post

---

---

**21.** the man - sell his car - his flat

---

---

**22.** the girl - wear a necklace - a bracelet

---

---

**23.** the woman - wash the dishes - the windows

---

---

**24.** they - stay at a hotel - an inn

---

---

## SIMPLE PAST TENSE - *Yesterday, last, ago*- (Simple Present to Simple Past)

### SIMPLE PAST: *Yesterday, last, ago*

#### NOTICE:

In (a): *yesterday* is used with *morning, afternoon, and evening*.

In (b): *last* is used with *night, with long periods of time (week, month, year), with seasons (spring, summer, etc.), and with days of the week*.

In (c): *ago* means “in the past.” It follows specific lengths of time (e.g., *two minutes + ago, five years + ago*).

| YESTERDAY  | LAST  | AGO   |
|--|---|---|
| (a) Bob was here . . .<br><i>yesterday</i> .<br><i>yesterday morning</i> .<br><i>yesterday afternoon</i> .<br><i>yesterday evening</i> . | (b) Sue was here . . .<br><i>last night</i> .<br><i>last week</i> .<br><i>last month</i> .<br><i>last year</i> .<br><br><i>last spring</i> .<br><i>last summer</i> .<br><i>last fall</i> .<br><i>last winter</i> .<br><br><i>last Monday</i> .<br><i>last Tuesday</i> .<br><i>last Wednesday</i> .<br><i>etc.</i> | (c) Tom was here . . .<br><i>five minutes ago</i> .<br><i>two hours ago</i> .<br><i>three days ago</i> .<br><i>a (one) week ago</i> .<br><i>six months ago</i> .<br><i>a (one) year ago</i> . |

Change the following sentences to simple past tense. Change the time expressions, too.

Examples: He **goes** to work every day. He **went** to work **yesterday**.  
I **study** English every night. I **studied** English **last night**.

1. He comes to school at 8.30.

2. He does his homework every night.

3. I clean my room every week.

4. He buys a new car every year.

5. They play football every Sunday.

6. I teach English every day.

7. We swim every summer.

8. He sells old books every Sunday.

9. They drink tea every morning.

10. They have a rest every afternoon.

11. She sleeps after lunch every day.

12. He flies to America every month.

---

**13.** He falls ill every winter.

---

**14.** I drive to work every morning.

---

**15.** I telephone my parents every week.

---

**16.** They build a hotel every year.

---

**17.** He travels to Europe every summer.

---

**18.** He watches TV every night.

---

**19.** She has dinner at 7.30 every evening.

---

**20.** He buys a new car every year.

---

**21.** The baby cries every night.

---

**22.** He catches the 8 o'clock train every morning.

---

**23.** He gives me something every morning.

---

# SIMPLE PAST TENSE (WH Questions)

## WHAT

**What** is used in a question when you want to find out about a thing. **Who** is used when you want to find out about a person. (See Chart 5-15 for questions with **who**.)

| (QUESTION + WORD)               | HELPING VERB | SUBJECT   | MAIN VERB       |         | ANSWER   |
|---------------------------------|--------------|---|-----------------|---------|--|
| (a) <b>What</b>                 | <b>Did</b>   | Carol   | <b>buy</b>      | a car?  | → <b>Yes, she did.</b> ( <i>She bought a car.</i> )  |
| (b) <b>What</b>                 | <b>did</b>   | Carol   | <b>buy?</b>     |         | → <b>A car.</b> ( <i>She bought a car.</i> )         |
| (c) <b>What</b>                 | <b>Is</b>    | Fred  | <b>holding</b>  | a book? | → <b>Yes, he is.</b> ( <i>He's holding a book.</i> ) |
| (d) <b>What</b>                 | <b>is</b>    | Fred  | <b>holding?</b> |         | → <b>A book.</b> ( <i>He's holding a book.</i> )     |
| S      V      O                 |              | In (e): <b>a car</b> is the object of the verb. |                 |         |  |
| (e) Carol bought <b>a car</b> . |              | In (f): <b>what</b> is the object of the verb.  |                 |         |  |
| O      V      S      V          |              | (f) <b>What</b> did Carol buy?                  |                 |         |  |

## WHO

| QUESTION                        | ANSWER                                       |  |
|---------------------------------|--|--|
| (a) <b>What</b> did they see?   | → <b>A boat.</b> ( <i>They saw a boat.</i> ) | <b>What</b> is used to ask questions about things.   |
| (b) <b>Who</b> did they see?    | → <b>Jim.</b> ( <i>They saw Jim.</i> )       | <b>Who</b> is used to ask questions about people.  |
| (c) <b>Who</b> did they see?    | → <b>Jim.</b> ( <i>They saw Jim.</i> )       | (c) and (d) have the same meaning.   |
| (d) <b>Whom</b> did they see?   | → <b>Jim.</b> ( <i>They saw Jim.</i> )       | <b>Whom</b> is used in formal English as the object of a verb or a preposition.  |
| O                               |  | In (c): <b>who</b> , not <b>whom</b> , is usually used in everyday English.  |
| (e) <b>Who(m)</b> did they see? |  | In (d): <b>whom</b> is used in very formal English. <b>Whom</b> is rarely used in everyday spoken English.   |
| S                               |  |  |
| (f) <b>Who</b> came?            | → <b>Mary.</b> ( <i>Mary came.</i> )         | In (e): <b>who(m)</b> is the object of the verb. Usual question word order ( <i>question word + helping verb + subject + main verb</i> ) is used.  |
| (g) <b>Who</b> lives there?     | → <b>Ed.</b> ( <i>Ed lives there.</i> )      | In (f), (g), and (h): <b>who</b> is the subject of the question. Usual question word order is NOT used. When <b>who</b> is the subject of a question, do NOT use <b>does</b> , <b>do</b> , or <b>did</b> . |
| (h) <b>Who</b> saw Jim?         | → <b>Ann.</b> ( <i>Ann saw Jim.</i> )        | Do NOT change the verb in any way: the verb form in the question is the same as the verb form in the answer.   |
|                                 |  | INCORRECT: <i>Who did come?</i>  |

**WHERE, WHY, WHEN, WHAT TIME,**

| QUESTION |  |   | SHORT ANSWER   |
|----------|--|---|--|
| (a)      | <i>Did</i> you <i>go</i> downtown?               | → | Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.  |
| (b)      | <b>Where</b> <i>did</i> you <i>go</i> ?          | → | <b>Downtown.</b>   |
| (c)      | <i>Did</i> you <i>run</i> because you were late? | → | Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.  |
| (d)      | <b>Why</b> <i>did</i> you <i>run</i> ?           | → | <b>Because I was late.</b>   |
| (e)      | <i>Did</i> Ann <i>come</i> at six?               | → | Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.  |
| (f)      | <b>When</b> } <i>did</i> Ann <i>come</i> ?       | → | <b>At six.</b>   |
| COMPARE: |  |   |  |
| (g)      | <b>What time</b> did Ann come?                   | → | <b>At six.</b><br>→ <b>Seven o'clock.</b><br>→ <b>Around 9:30.</b>   |
| (h)      | <b>When</b> did Ann come?                        | → | <b>At six.</b><br>→ <b>Friday.</b><br>→ <b>June 15th.</b><br>→ <b>Last week.</b><br>→ <b>Three days ago.</b> |

Answer the following sentences.

Examples: **What** did you drink this morning? I drank tea.  
**How** did you sleep last night? I slept well.

1. What time did you get up this morning?

2. Where did you have dinner last night?

3. What did you eat last night?

4. What time did you go to bed last night?

5. How did you come here?

6. Where did you go yesterday?

7. What time did you have breakfast this morning?

8. What did you do after breakfast?

9. What did you do after dinner last night?

10. What time did the first lesson start today?

**What time** usually asks specifically for time on a clock.

The answer to **when** can be various expressions of time.

11. What did you do last Sunday?

12. How many cups of tea did you drink yesterday?

13. What did you buy yesterday?

14. When did you begin to learn English?

15. Why did you begin to learn English?

-

16. Where did you go last Saturday?

17. How much money did you spend yesterday?

18. When did you last take an examination?

19. What did you read yesterday?

20. How many letters did you write last month?

21. Where were you last night?

22. What did you have for breakfast this morning?

23. What did you do last night?

24. Where did you sleep last night?

## SIMPLE PAST TENSE (WH Questions)

Ask information questions for the **underlined** words.

Example: I wrote a letter.      What did you write?  
He went to Ankara.      Where did he go?

1. The teacher wrote something on the board.

2. The cat caught a mouse.

3. I telephoned my father.

4. The police arrested the robbers.

5. The police arrested the robbers.

6. Sue typed three letters.

7. He went to England last year.

8. The film finished at 2 o'clock.

9. They ran very fast.

10. He rang the bell.

11. They swam in the lake.

12. She had bread and butter for breakfast.

13. He drank a little water.

14. They started to build a new house. 15. He made war films.

15. They played football once a week.

16. He came late because of the traffic.

17. I saw something very interesting.

18. He wanted the blue one.

19. The meeting started late.

20. Three people wanted to see you yesterday.

21. He didn't come because he was ill. 23. I saw Mr. White last night.

22. The tall man stole the car.

## SIMPLE PAST TENSE

**Fill in the blanks with the PAST form of the verbs in the parenthesis. Rewrite the story.**

Benjamin Franklin ..... was born ..... (be born) in Boston in 1706. He (be) the fifteenth of the seventeen children of a poor candle maker. He (go ) to school only one year. He ... (begin) to work when he was twelve. At the age of fourteen he (decide) to be a writer. He (copy) the great stories of famous writers and later he (become) the best known writer in his time. When he.. (be) seventeen, he (leave) Boston and (arrive) in Philadelphia with only a few pennies in his (spend) the next forty years for his government. He (play) an important role in the founding of the USA.

Franklin (be) also an important scientist and inventor. He (draw) electricity from a cloud on a kite string. He (write) one of the first text books on electricity. He (invent) a simple lightning rod and many other practical tools. He (make) a study of water and (discover) many principles of hydrodynamics. He even (invent) bifocal glasses when he was seventy-eight and (need) them himself. Franklin (do) all these things and many more because he (believe) he (can).

# SIMPLE PRESENT to SIMPLE PAST TENSE

**Read the following story and write the story again. Use THE SIMPLE PAST:**

Bob is a young sailor. He lives in England, but he is often away with his ship. One summer he comes back from a long voyage and finds new neighbors near his mother's house. They have a pretty daughter, and Bob soon loves her and he wants to marry her when he comes back. Bob promises the girl to send a present from every port. Bob's first port is Capetown in Africa, and he sends the girl a parrot from there. The parrot speaks three languages. When Bob's ship reaches Australia, a letter comes from the girl. The letter says, "Thank you for the parrot, Bob. It tasted much better than a chicken."

Bob **was** a young sailor. He **lived** in England, but he **was** often away with his ship.

# PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE

|                         |  |   |  |   |
|-------------------------|--|---|--|---|
| <b>SIMPLE PAST</b>      | <b>verb + -ed or 2nd form</b>  | He <b>worked</b> as a lorry driver.   | <b>yesterday, last week, last month, last .... Before(conj.)....</b>   | The "simple past" gives expression to an action that <b>started in the past and finished in the past</b>  |
| <b>PAST PROGRESSIVE</b> | <b>was / were + -ing (I/she/he/it was working. You/we/they were working.</b> | <b>While</b> father <b>was doing</b> the washing up<br>Mum <b>was phoning</b> Granny. | <b>at ten o'clock</b><br><b>last night</b><br><b>when</b><br><b>while</b><br><b>When= at that time</b><br><b>While= during that time</b> | The "past progressive" gives expression to apparently continuous uninterrupted actions in the past (perhaps suddenly interrupted by an action in "simple past") |

Change the following sentences to past **PROGRESSIVE** tense. Add past time expressions like **at 9 o'clock, at 5 o'clock, last night, etc,**

**Examples:** He is sleeping.

He **was sleeping** at 5 o'clock.

She is running.

She **was running** at 8 o'clock this morning.

1. She is cooking.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The policeman is directing the traffic.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I am reading a story.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. We are drinking tea.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. He is answering some questions.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The postman is delivering the letters.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The typist is typing something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The teacher is writing a sentence on the board.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. They are carrying the suitcases.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. She is watching TV.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. The sun is shining.  
\_\_\_\_\_

12. I am listening to the radio.

---

13. They are studying.

---

14. The dog is barking.

---

15. The guide is taking the tourists to the Blue Mosque.

---

16. He is polishing his shoes.

---

17. They are playing football.

---

18. The secretary is answering the telephone.

---

19. He is washing his hands.

---

20. We are waiting for a bus.

---

21. He is repairing the switch.

---

22. They are working hard.

---

23. She is talking on the phone.

---

# PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE (Affirmative – Positive Form) WHEN - WHILE

## WHILE

(a) The phone rang **while I was sleeping**. OR:  
(b) **While I was sleeping**, the phone rang.

**while** + subject + verb = a time clause  
*While I was sleeping* is a time clause.  
A *while*-clause describes an activity that was in progress at the time another activity happened.  
The verb in a *while*-clause is often past progressive  
(e.g., *was sleeping*).

## WHEN

(a) The mouse appeared **while I was studying**. OR:  
(b) **While I was studying**, the mouse appeared.  
(c) **When the mouse appeared**, I was studying. OR:  
(d) I was studying **when the mouse appeared**.

The verb in a *while*-clause is often past progressive, as in (a) and (b).  
The verb in a *when*-clause is often simple past, as in (c) and (d).

# PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE

Fill in the blanks with a correct form of PAST PROGRESSIVE:

1. Alice hurt herself while she (skate).

---

2. I met my neighbor while I (walk) home from work.

---

3. Sally saw a friend while she (ride) her bicycle along Park St.

---

4. Peter fell asleep while he (study).

---

5. Bob stepped on Jane's feet while they (dance) together.

---

6. I cut myself while I (shave).

---

7. Mr. and Mrs. Brown burned themselves while they (bake) cookies.

---

8. Tommy had a nightmare while he (sleep) at a friend's house.

---



**19.** you (look) at the road when the car hit the boy?

---

**20.** The postman came just as I (leave) home.

---

**21.** I met her when I (walk) to school.

---

**22.** At nine o'clock last night I (read) a book.

---

**23.** When I saw him, he (eat) fish and chips.

---

**24.** When my father came in, I (smoke) a cigarette.

---

# PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Affirmative – Positive Form)

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>(a) Jane <b>called</b> me yesterday.</p> <p>(b) I <b>talked</b> to Jane for an hour last night.</p> <p>(c) We <b>went</b> to Jack's house last Friday.</p> <p>(d) What time <b>did</b> you <b>get up</b> this morning?</p> | <p>The <b>simple past</b> describes activities or situations that began and ended at a particular time in the past (e.g., <i>yesterday, last night</i>).</p>   |
| <p>(e) I <b>was studying</b> when Jane called me yesterday.</p> <p>(f) While I <b>was studying</b> last night, Jane called.</p>   | <p>The <b>past progressive</b> describes an activity that was in progress (was happening) at the time another action happened. In (e) and (f): The studying was in progress when Jane called.</p>  |
| <p>(g) I <b>opened</b> my umbrella when it <b>began</b> to rain.</p>  | <p>If both the <i>when</i>-clause and the main clause in a sentence are simple past, it means that the action in the <i>when</i>-clause happened first and the action in the main clause happened second. In (g): First, it began to rain; second, I opened my umbrella.</p> |
| <p>COMPARE</p> <p>(h) When the phone <b>rang</b>, I <b>answered</b> it.</p> <p>(i) When the phone <b>rang</b>, I <b>was studying</b>.</p>   | <p>In (h): First, the phone rang; second, I answered it.</p> <p>In (i): First, the studying was in progress; second, the phone rang.</p>   |

Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses using the SIMPLE PAST or the PAST PROGRESSIVE. Rewrite the sentences exactly.

**Example:** a) When you **(come)** in, I **(do)** the crossword puzzle.

When you came in, I was doing the crossword puzzle.

b) As I **(come)** home, I **(meet)** an old friend.

As I was coming home, I met an old friend.

1. He **(get)** on the train when the train **(move)**.

2. As the man **(walk)** up the stairs, the lights **(go)** out.

3. When the war **(begin)**, they **(live)** in Austria.

4. When the war **(begin)**, they **(move)** to the USA.

5. I **(fall)** down as I **(get)** off the bus.

6. He **(wear)** a big strange hat when I first **(meet)** him.

7. He **(paint)** the doors and the windows while I **(paint)** the walls.

8. Just as I **(pick)** up the receiver, the telephone **(ring)**.

9. When I **(be)** in Germany, I **(work)** in a coal mine.

10. he (listen) while the teacher (talk) ?

---

10. When the storm (break) , I (water) the garden.

---

11. What you (do) when I (see) you yesterday?

---

12. He (sleep) soundly when they (arrive) .

---

13. While you (watch) TV, I (do) my homework.

---

14. While he (talk) , I (finish) reading the book.

---

15. When the driver (see) the policeman, he suddenly (stop) .

---

16. I (dream) when the dog (start) to bark.

---

17. He (be) in bed while they (have) breakfast.

---

18. We (have) a flat tire while we (drive) to Ankara.

---

19. Where you (go) when I (see) you last night?

---

20. It (rain) when I (leave) home.

---

21. When you (call) , I (sleep) .

---

22. I (listen) to the radio when I (hear) the explosion.

---

23. The plane (crash) while it (land).

---

24. I (go / not) to a movie last night. I (stay) home.

---

25. Fred (come / not) to class every day.

---

26. Sue (read) a book right now. She (watch / not) TV.

---

27. I (finish / not) my homework last night. I (go) to bed early.

---

28. Jane (stand / not) up right now. She (sit) down.

---

29. It (rain / not) right now. The rain (stop) a few minutes ago.

---

30. The weather (be / not) cold today, but it (be) cold yesterday.

---

31. Mary and I (go / not) shopping yesterday. We (go) shopping last Monday.

---

32. I (go) to a movie last night, but I (enjoy / not) it.

---

33. I (write) a letter to my girlfriend yesterday, but I (write / not) a letter to her last week.

---

34. My husband (come / not) home for dinner last night. He (stay) at his office.

---

35. The children (go) to bed a half an hour ago. They (sleep) now.

---

36. We (be) late for the movie last night. The movie (start) at 7:00, but we (arrive / not) until 7:15.

---

---

37. He (dance) with Mary now.

---

38. She usually (take) the bus to school.

---

39. Her husband never (remember) her birthday.

---

40. We (watch) a film on television at the moment.

---

## PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST TENSE

1. While they (travel) to China, Marco (keep) a diary.

---

2. I (get) up at eight o'clock yesterday morning.

---

3. Mark (talk) to John on the phone last night.

---

4. Mark (talk) to John on the phone right now.

---

5. Mark (talk) to John on the phone every day.

---

6. Jim and I (eat) lunch at the cafeteria two hours ago.

---

7. We (eat) lunch at the cafeteria every day.

---

8. I (go) to bed early last night.

---

9. My roommate (study) Spanish last year.

---

10. Sue (write) a letter to her parents yesterday.

---

11. Sue (write) a letter to her parents every week.

---

12. Sue is in her room right now. She (sit) at her desk. She

---

13. (write) a letter to her boyfriend.

---

14. Mariann (do) her homework last night.

---

15. Yesterday I (see) Dick at the library.

---

16. I (have) a dream last night. I (dream) about my friends. I (sleep) for eight hours.

---

17. Alice (smoke) a cigarette after class yesterday.

---

18. My wife (come) home around five every day.

---

19. Yesterday she (come) home at 5:15.

---

20. Our teacher (stand) in the middle of the room right now.

---

21. Our teacher (stand) in the front of the room yesterday.

---

22. John usually (sit) in the back of the room, but yesterday he (sit) in the front row. Today he (be) absent.

---

---

23. He (be) absent two days ago too.

---

24. Mrs. White (drive) past a house in Main Street when she (see) the ground floor on fire.

---

25. While he (fly) off the Miami Coast, the pilot (see) sharks approaching the swimmers.

---

26. The fireman (fight) the fire on a balcony below when he (hear) someone's shouts.

---

27. She (die) while she (run) after a bus.

---

28. We (have) dinner when the electricity (go) off.

---

29. She (think) of something else while you (talk) to her.

---

30. I (see) her while I (look) out of the window.

---

31. While the teacher (talk), the students (look) at an insect on the ceiling.

---

32. He (talk) with Mary, when Mrs. Smith came in.

---

33. They (study) two hours last night.

34. Jane (sleep) when the telephone rang.

---

35. As I (walk) to the lab, I met my friend.

---

36. We (watch) TV last night.

---

37. The customer (pay) his cheque when he dropped his credit card.

---

38. The barber (cut) my hair yesterday.

---

39. She (dance) when she hurt her ankle.

---

40. It (rain) hard when I got up.

---

41. It (rain) hard last night.

---

42. Sally (eat) dinner last night when someone knock) on the door.

---

43. I began to study at seven last night. Fred (come) at seven- thirty. I (study) when Fred (come).

---

44. While I (study) last night, Fred (drop by) to visit me.

---

45. My roommate's parents (call) him last night while we (watch) TV.

---

46. My mother called me around five. My husband came home a little after five. When he (come) home, I (talk) to my mother on the phone.

---

47. Yesterday Tom and Janice (go) to the zoo around one. They (see) many kinds of animals.

---

48. They stayed at the zoo for two hours. While they (walk) home, it (begin) to rain, so they (stop) at a small cafe and (have) a cup of coffee.

---

49. Yesterday afternoon I (go) to visit the Parker family. When I (get) there around two o'clock, Mrs. Parker (be) in the yard. She (plant) flowers in her garden. Mr. Parker (be) in the garage. He (work) on their car. He (change) the oil.

---

---

---

# SIMPLE PRESENT – PRESENT PROGRESSIVE - PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</b> (right now)<br><br>(a) It's 10:00 now. Boris <b>is sitting</b> in class.  | The present progressive describes an activity in progress right now, at the moment of speaking. See Chart 3-1.<br>In (a): Right now it is 10:00. Boris began to sit before 10:00. Sitting is in progress at 10:00. |
| <b>PAST PROGRESSIVE</b> (in progress yesterday)<br><br>(b) It was 10:00. Boris <b>was sitting</b> in class.  | The past progressive describes an activity in progress at a particular time in the past.<br>In (b): Boris began to sit in class before 10:00 yesterday. At 10:00 yesterday, sitting in class was in progress.      |
| <b>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE FORM: AM, IS, ARE + -ING</b><br><br>(c) It's 10:00. I <b>am sitting</b> in class.<br>Boris <b>is sitting</b> in class.<br>We <b>are sitting</b> in class. | The forms of the present progressive and the past progressive consist of <b>be + -ing</b> .<br>The present progressive uses the present forms of <b>be</b> : <b>am, is, and are + -ing</b> .                       |
| <b>PAST PROGRESSIVE FORM: WAS, WERE + -ING</b><br><br>(d) It was 10:00. Boris <b>was sitting</b> in class.<br>We <b>were sitting</b> in class.                                   | The past progressive uses the past forms of <b>be</b> : <b>was</b> and <b>were + -ing</b> .  |

# **SIMPLE PRESENT – PRESENT PROGRESSIVE- PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST-FUTURE**

*Rewrite the following sentences using the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Use **SIMPLE PRESENT, SIMPLE PAST, PRESENT PROGRESSIVE, PAST PROGRESSIVE or FUTURE TENSE**.*

Examples: He (sleep) now. He **is sleeping** now.  
I (see) him **yesterday**. I **saw** him yesterday.

1. He usually (wake) up at 6 o'clock.

---

2. They (have) breakfast at the moment.

---

3. He (buy) a new bicycle yesterday.

---

4. When I (see) him, he (study) English.

---

5. We (live) in Fatih.

---

6. I (do) my English homework tonight.

---

7. Be careful! Somebody (follow) us.

---

8. My father never (drink) the before he (go) to bed.

---

9. Where you (go) last Sunday?

---

10. I hate him. I (not talk) to him again.

---

11. Don't worry. I (phone) you when he (come) .

---

12. I (not see) them last night.

---

13. While the man (repair) my radio, his son (play) with the tools.

---

14. He (go) mosque **every** Friday.

---

15. I (have) lunch with the new director **tomorrow**.

---

16. As I (swim) , it (start) to rain.

---

17. Please (call) me when the news (start) .

---

18. he (pack) his suitcases yesterday?

---

19. he always (start) work so late?

---

20. they still (wait) for me?

---

21. He (sell) his car last Sunday.

---

22. He never (have) breakfast at home.

---

23. I (visit) my grandparents next week.

---

24. She (not drink) tea in the evening.

# PRESENT PERFECT TENSE



Jim has eaten lunch.



Ann hasn't eaten lunch.

## PRESENT PERFECT, MEANING #1: SOMETHING HAPPENED BEFORE NOW AT AN UNSPECIFIED TIME.

|  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
|  | <p>(a) Jim <b>has</b> already <b>eaten</b> lunch.<br/>     (b) Ann <b>hasn't</b> <b>eaten</b> lunch yet.<br/>     (c) <b>Have</b> you ever <b>eaten</b> at that restaurant?</p> | <p>The PRESENT PERFECT expresses an activity or situation that occurred (or did not occur) before now, at some unspecified time in the past.<br/>     In (a): Jim's lunch occurred before the present time. The exact time is not mentioned; it is unimportant or unknown. For the speaker, the only important information is that Jim's lunch occurred in the past, sometime before now.</p> |
|  | <p>(d) Pete <b>has</b> <b>eaten</b> at that restaurant <b>many times</b>.<br/>     (e) I <b>have</b> <b>eaten</b> there <b>twice</b>.</p>                                       | <p>An activity may be repeated two, several, or more times <b>before now</b>, at <b>unspecified times in the past</b>, as in (d) and (e).</p>   |

## PRESENT PERFECT, MEANING #2: A SITUATION BEGAN IN THE PAST AND CONTINUES TO THE PRESENT.

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  | <p>(f) We've <b>been</b> in class <b>since ten o'clock this morning</b>.<br/>     (g) I <b>have known</b> Ben <b>for ten years</b>. I met him ten years ago. I still know him today. We are friends.</p> | <p>When the present perfect is used with <b>since</b> or <b>for</b>, it expresses situations that began in the past and continue to the present.<br/>     In (f): Class started at ten. We are still in class now, at the moment of speaking.<br/>     INCORRECT: We are in class <b>since ten o'clock this morning</b>.</p> |
|--|--|--|

## HAVE BEEN

SITUATION: I came to this city on February 1st. It is now April 1st. I am still in this city.

(a) I **have been** here **since February 1st**.  
 (b) I **have been** here **for two months**.

SITUATION: Kim came to this city on January 1st. It is now April 1st. Kim is still in this city.

(c) Kim **has been** here **since January**.  
 (d) Kim **has been** here **for three months**.

SITUATION: I came to the classroom at nine o'clock. I am in the classroom now. It's nine-thirty now.

(e) I **have been** here **since nine o'clock**.  
 (f) I **have been** here **for 30 minutes**.

SITUATION: Ann lives in another city. She came to visit me Monday morning. Now it is Friday morning. She is still here.

(g) Ann **has been** here **since Monday**.  
 (h) Ann **has been** here **for four days**.

**Have been** expresses the idea that a situation began in the past and still exists at present. **Have been** is used with **since** or **for** to tell how long the situation has existed. (a) and (b) have the same meaning.

Third person singular = **has been**, as in (c) and (d).

**Since** is followed by **a specific time**:

since February (specific month)  
 since nine o'clock (specific clock time)  
 since 1995 (specific year)

**For** is followed by **a length of time**:

for two months (number of months)  
 for 30 minutes (length of clock time)  
 for four days (number of days)  
 for three years (number of years)

# PRESENT PERFECT

Write **PAST** and **PAST PARTICIPLE** forms of the given verbs.

| <b>SIMPLE FORM</b> | <b>SIMPLE PAST</b> | <b>PAST PARTICIPLE</b> |
|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. finish          | finished           | <i>finished</i>        |
| 2. be              |                    |                        |
| 3. become          |                    |                        |
| 4. begin           |                    |                        |
| 5. bite            |                    |                        |
| 6. break           |                    |                        |
| 7. bring           |                    |                        |
| 8. build           |                    |                        |
| 9. buy             |                    |                        |
| 10. call           |                    |                        |
| 11. catch          |                    |                        |
| 12. choose         |                    |                        |
| 13. come           |                    |                        |
| 14. cost           |                    |                        |
| 15. cut            |                    |                        |
| 16. cut            |                    |                        |
| 17. do             |                    |                        |
| 18. drink          |                    |                        |
| 19. drive          |                    |                        |
| 20. eat            |                    |                        |
| 21. fall           |                    |                        |
| 22. feel           |                    |                        |
| 23. find           |                    |                        |
| 24. fly            |                    |                        |
| 25. fly            |                    |                        |
| 26. forget         |                    |                        |
| 27. forgive        |                    |                        |
| 28. get            |                    |                        |
| 29. have           |                    |                        |
| 30. know           |                    |                        |
| 31. meet           |                    |                        |
| 32. read           |                    |                        |
| 33. see            |                    |                        |
| 34. stay           |                    |                        |
| 35. study          |                    |                        |
| 36. write          |                    |                        |

# PRESENT PERFECT

Ask questions and give answers in present perfect tense as in the example.

Examples:

you - open the door  
she - type the letter

What have you just done? I have just opened the door.  
What has she just done? She has just typed the letter.

1. Ali - come in

---

2. Hasan - turn off the TV

---

3. they - finish eating

---

4. she - read a story

---

5. we - arrive home

---

6. the teacher - ask us some questions

---

7. your father - give me some money

---

8. you - take out my pen

---

9. Bob - study French

---

10. the milkman – leave

---

11. they - have lunch

---

12. she - have a cup of tea

---

13. Bill - pay a bill

---

14. Selma - make a sentence

---

15. Mehmet - eat a sandwich

---

16. your parents - watch a film

---

17. the postman - deliver some letters

---

18. the player - leave the field

19. the secretary - answer the telephone

20. they - get on a bus

21. she - lose her handbag

22. he - shave

23. you - sign the contract

24. the police - arrest the murderer

## PRESENT PERFECT - Have you ever...?

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(a) <i>Have you ever been</i> in Hawaii?</p> <p>(b) <i>Has Pedro ever had</i> a job (in his lifetime)?</p>   | <p>In (a): <b>ever</b> means “in your lifetime, from the time you were born to the present moment.”</p> <p>Questions with <b>ever</b> frequently use the present perfect.</p>   |
| <p>(c) A: Have you ever been in London?<br/>B: Yes, <b>I have</b>. (I have been in London.)</p> <p>(d) A: Has Tom ever lived in Chicago?<br/>B: Yes, he <b>has</b>. (He has lived in Chicago.)</p> <p>(e) A: Have you ever been in Korea?<br/>B: No, <b>I haven't</b>. (I haven't ever been in Korea.)</p> <p>(f) A: Has Sue ever lived in Paris?<br/>B: No, she <b>hasn't</b>. (She hasn't ever lived in Paris.)</p> | <p>In a short answer to a yes/no question with the present perfect, the helping verb (<b>have</b> or <b>has</b>) is used.</p> <p>In (c): Speaker B is saying that he has been in London at some time in his lifetime.</p> |
| <p>(g) <b>I haven't ever been</b> in Korea.</p> <p>(h) <b>I've never been</b> in Korea.</p> <p>(i) She <b>hasn't ever lived</b> in Paris.</p> <p>(j) She's <b>never lived</b> in Paris.</p>   | <p>(g) and (h) have the same meaning.<br/><i>haven't ever been</i> = <i>have never been</i></p> <p>(i) and (j) have the same meaning.<br/><i>hasn't ever lived</i> = <i>has never lived</i></p>                           |

# PRESENT PERFECT - Have you ever...?

Answer the questions.

1. Have you ever been to Romania? (-)

---

2. Has your father ever helped you do your English homework? (+)

---

3. Have you ever tried to learn how to drive a car? (+)

---

4. Has your English teacher ever shouted at you? When?

---

5. Have your English teachers ever organized a picnic for you? (+/-)

---

6. Has your father ever taken you to the theatre? When?

---

7. Has your deskmate ever made you get angry? When?

---

8. Has your father ever bought an expensive present on your birthday? When?

---

9. Have you ever been to California? (-)

---

10. Has your father ever helped you do your English homework? (+ / 1)

---

11. Has your brother ever had a traffic accident? When?

---

12. Have you ever tried to learn how to drive a car? (+ / 1)

---

13. Has your English teacher ever shouted at you? When?

---

14. Have you ever met a famous politician? When?

---

15. Has your mother ever cooked "fried fish with mayonnaise" for you? (-)

---

16. Have your English teachers ever organized a picnic for you? (-)

---

17. Have you ever watched a lion eating an animal in its cage? When?

---

18. Have you ever won any money on the National Lottery? When?

---

19. Has your father ever taken you to the theatre? When?

---

20. Has your deskmate ever made you get angry? When?

---

21. Have you ever got the best point from the quizzes in English? (+ / many)

---

22. Has your father ever bought an expensive present on your birthday? When?

---

23. Have you ever tried to do something dangerous? What?

---

# PRESENT PERFECT - Have you ever...?

Ask questions.

Example: **.Have you ever bought an expensive gift?**

Yes, I have. I bought an expensive gift for her.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
No, I haven't.
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, once. I was there two years ago.
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, I have. I shouted at him yesterday.
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, I have. I got angry with him when he broke my pencil.
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
No, she has never helped me do it.
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, he has. He was late for school two days ago.

## PRESENT PERFECT (Positive- Negative – Question form)

*Rewrite the following sentences using the present perfect forms of the verbs in brackets.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) <b>Have</b> you <u>lived</u> here for a long time?<br>(b) <b>Has</b> Ken <u>been</u> in this class since the beginning of the term?                         | Question form of the present perfect:<br><b>have/has</b> + subject + <u>past participle</u>  |
| (c) I <u>have not (haven't)</u> <b>lived</b> here for a long time.<br>(d) Ken <u>has not (hasn't)</u> <b>been</b> in the class since the beginning of the term. | Negative form of the present perfect:<br><b>have/has</b> + <b>not</b> + <u>past participle</u><br>Negative contractions:<br><i>have not = haven't</i><br><i>has not = hasn't</i> |

Example: a) The bell just (**ring**). The bell has just rung. b) I (**not talk**) to him yet. I haven't talked to him yet.

1. I (**speak**) to him several times.

2. I (**lose**) the key to the door.

3. He (**be**) here before.

4. They (**not visit**) us for a long time.

5. She (**be**) to England.

6. We (**not watch**) any good films recently.

7. I already (**wash**) the dishes.

8. He (**repair**) the radio yet?

9. She just (**set**) the table.

10. The teacher (**not arrive**) yet.

11. They (**travel**) all over the world.

12. I (**read**) that book before.

13. you ever (**be**) to Germany?

---

14. I never (**meet**) you before.

---

15. He (**build**) five houses so far.

---

16. you (**see**) him lately?

---

17. How long she (**be**) a secretary?

---

18. He (**not write**) to me since last year.

---

19. I (**learn**) many new words this week.

---

20. you (**hear**) from your parents?

---

21. I (**not see**) them for a long time.

---

## PRESENT PERFECT – Yes/No -Questions

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, I have. I bought a bottle of expensive perfume for her on her birthday

2. \_\_\_\_\_  
No, I haven't.

3. \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, once. I was there two years ago.

4. \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, I have. I shouted at him yesterday.

5. \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, I have. I got angry with him when he broke my pencil.

6. \_\_\_\_\_  
No, she has never helped me do it.

7. \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, he has. He was late for school two days ago.

8. \_\_\_\_\_  
No, never.

# YET - ALREADY

**YET:** use yet in **questions** and **negative** sentences to say that something has not happened up to the present time and a situation *has started to exist*

- a) I haven't asked him yet (=but I will) .
- b) Has Mary arrived **yet**?
- c) A: Have you finished your homework? B: Not **yet** .
- d) Has the new washing machine arrived **yet**?
- e) I haven't been to the new exhibit **yet**, but I hope to this weekend.
- f) The potatoes aren't quite ready **yet**.

## ALREADY:

- a) **Already** is used to say that something has been done before or before a particular time and does not need doing again  
Mary **has already** eaten dinner.
- b) **Already** is used to say that something has happened too soon or before the expected time  
Have you eaten all that food **already**?  
Is it 5 o'clock **already**?
- c) **Already** is used to say that a situation exists and it might get worse, greater, etc  
Hurry up, we're **already** late.

## ALREADY (Present Perfect)

Give answers with ALREADY. (Use the words in the parentheses.)

**Examples:** a) Clean your room.

I **have already** cleaned it.

b) When is he going to leave?

He **has already** left.

1. Sweep the rooms. (My mother)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Wash your hands. (The children)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. When are you going to do your homework? (I)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. When is he going to mend the bike? (He)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. When are they going to start studying? (They)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Paint the kitchen window. (My father)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Telephone your parents (We)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. When is she going to send the parcel? (She)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Vacuum the room. (They)  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. When is he going to repair his car? (He)  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. When is she going to do the washing? (She)  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Wake your father up. (I)  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Tell him not to be late again. (I)  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. When are you going to talk to him? (We)  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Peel the potatoes. (Mary)  
\_\_\_\_\_

16. Cut the meat. (The butcher)

---

17. When are they going to choose the presents? (They)

---

18. When is he going to fix his car? (He)

---

19. Have some tea. (Joseph and I)

---

20. Change the light bulbs. (The electrician)

---

21. When are you going to pay the telephone bill? (We)

---

22. When is she going to iron the shirts? (She)

---

23. Open the boxes. (Mark)

---

24. Type the letters. (The secretary)

---

## **YET – (Present Perfect) - QUESTION FORM**

Follow the example and do the same using YET:

Example: She has been in the shop. (buy anything)

**She has been in the shop but she hasn't bought anything YET.**

1. I've written to them three times. (not reply)

---

2. I've asked you again and again. (not do it)

---

3. I lent him \$10 last month. (not give it back)

---

4. He lost his pen a week ago. (not find it)

---

5. He borrowed my book last year. (not give it back)

---

6. She went to New York six months ago. (not come back)

---

7. She gave me \$2 a week ago. (not return it)

---

8. I finished reading my library books a long time ago. (not change them)

---

9. She went to the bus-stop half an hour ago. (the bus / not come)

---

10. He's still studying that lesson. (not learn it)

---

## **YET – (Present Perfect) – QUESTION FORM**

Put the words in order to make meaningful sentence.

**Example:** Susan and Mike have yet arrived? **-Have Susan and Mike have arrived yet?**

1. has Tom his sold car yet ?

2. in touch have yet been you?

3. started your new job yet have ?

4. the yet has plane landed ?

5. informed have his parents the accident yet about?

6. yet they have finished meal their ?

7. this morning yet any coffee had he has ?

8. Lee his parents asked have yet ?

9. report yet you done haven't the Why ?

10. where to go decided yet you have ?

11. made any friends at have school you yet ?

12. asked have Sara to help you yet you ?

13. eaten you at that restaurant yet have you ?

14. your brother has found job a new yet ?

15. on holiday have been you this year yet?

## **YET – ALREADY (Present Perfect)**

Fill in the blanks with yet or already.

**Example:** He has already visited a great number of different places.

1. He hasn't called us ---.

2. They have --- sent the letter.

3. John has --- bought the tickets for the football match.

4. We have --- been to Mexico three times.

5. Has John bought a new car ---?

6. The plane has --- left.

7. Has she done it ---? No, not ---.

8. A: Haven't they arrived ---? B: Oh, yes. They have arrived.

9. Hurry up! The class has --- started.

10. Be careful! They have --- painted the door.

11. Haven't you read the book ---?

12. You haven't visited Tokyo ---.

13. As I have --- mentioned, we need to raise more political support.

14. Have they said anything about the money ---?

15. Was the apartment empty when you moved in or was it --- furnished?

16. Has the new washing machine arrived ---?

17. I can't believe I --- forgot his phone number!

18. Don't buy any more toys for the kids. They've got plenty ---.

19. I haven't been to the new exhibit ---, but I hope to this weekend.

20. The show has --- started.

21. The potatoes aren't quite ready ---.

22. "Do you want a cup of coffee?" "No thanks, I --- have some."

23. "Should I tell Kay?" "She --- knows."

24. I haven't seen the new play ---.

25. Mark, haven't you got up ---?

26. Sorry, I haven't finished ---.

## **YET – ALREADY - Present Perfect**

*Remember: Use already in affirmative (positive) answers and yet in negative answers.*

*Example:      you - have breakfast    Have you had breakfast yet?*

*Yes, I have already had breakfast.*

*No, I haven't had breakfast yet.*

*Ask questions and give answers as in the example.*

1. you - learn English

2. you - have lunch

3. your father – arrive

4. the sun – set

5. you - finish your homework

6. your friends - read the story

7. the news – start

8. you - buy the newspaper

9. the baby - wake up

10. the students – leave the school

11. you - find the new words

12. the teacher – come

13. they - start studying

14. you - listen to the new CD

15. you - telephone your parents

16. she - wash the dishes

17. he - polish the shoes

18. they - paint their house

19. you - speak to the manager

20. you - buy a rubber

21. she - send the letters

22. the police - arrest the robber

23. the goalkeeper - throw the ball

24. the rain – stop

# PRESENT PERFECT – (Just)

Follow the example and do the same using JUST:

**Example:** he / go out

- What has he **JUST** done?
- He has **JUST** gone out.

1. She / leave the room

---

2. they / watch the news

---

3. I / finish homework

---

4. he / put on the jacket

---

5. she / catch a fish

---

6. he / call a taxi

---

7. you / write a letter

---

8. the girl / burn the cake

---

9. the teacher / walk out

---

10. the dog / see the cat

---

11. Jane / turn the TV off

---

12. the boys / eat dinner

---

# PRESENT PERFECT – (Since - For)

|              |   |  |  |
|--------------|---|--|--|
| <b>SINCE</b> | <p>(a) <b>I have been</b> here</p> <p>(b) CORRECT: <b>I have lived</b> here since May.*<br/>CORRECT: <b>I have been</b> here since May.</p> <p>(c) <b>INCORRECT:</b> <i>I am living here since May.</i></p> <p>(d) <b>INCORRECT:</b> <i>I live here since May.</i></p> <p>(e) <b>INCORRECT:</b> <i>I lived here since May.</i><br/><b>INCORRECT:</b> <i>I was here since May.</i></p> | <p>since eight o'clock.<br/>since Tuesday.<br/>since May.<br/>since 1999.<br/>since January 3, 2001.<br/>since yesterday.<br/>since last month.</p>          | <p><b>Since</b> is followed by the mention of a <i>specific point in time</i>: an hour, a day, a month, a year, etc.</p> <p><b>Since</b> expresses the idea that something began at a specific time in the past and continues to the present.</p>  |
|              |   |  | <p>The <i>present perfect</i> is used in sentences with <b>since</b>.</p> <p>In (c): The <i>present progressive</i> is NOT used.</p> <p>In (d): The <i>simple present</i> is NOT used.</p> <p>In (e): The <i>simple past</i> is NOT used.</p>  |
|              |   |  | <p><b>Since</b> may also introduce a time clause (i.e., a subject and verb may follow <b>since</b>). Notice in the examples: The <i>present perfect</i> is used in the main clause; the <i>simple past</i> is used in the <b>since</b>-clause.</p>   |
|              |   |  | <p><b>FOR</b></p> <p>(f) <b>I have lived</b> here</p> <p>(g) <b>Al has met</b> many people</p> <p>MAIN CLAUSE (present perfect)</p> <p>SINCE-CLAUSE (simple past)</p> <p>since I <b>was</b> a child.</p> <p>since he <b>came</b> here.</p> <p><b>for</b> ten minutes.<br/><b>for</b> two hours.<br/><b>for</b> five days.<br/><b>for</b> about three weeks.<br/><b>for</b> almost six months.<br/><b>for</b> many years.<br/><b>for</b> a long time.</p> |
|              | <p>(h) <b>I have been</b> here</p> <p>(i) <b>I have lived</b> here <b>for</b> two years. I moved here two years ago, and I still live here.</p> <p>(j) <b>I lived</b> in Athens <b>for</b> two years. I don't live in Athens now.</p>   | <p>for ten minutes.<br/>for two hours.<br/>for five days.<br/>for about three weeks.<br/>for almost six months.<br/>for many years.<br/>for a long time.</p> | <p>In (i): The use of the <i>present perfect</i> in a sentence with <b>for</b> + a <i>length of time</i> means that the action began in the past and continues to the present.</p> <p>In (j): The use of the <i>simple past</i> means that the action began and ended in the past.</p>   |

\*ALSO CORRECT: *I have been living here since May.* See Chart 4-7, p. 100, for a discussion of the *present perfect progressive*.

## Use "since" and "for"

- \_\_\_\_\_ two months
- \_\_\_\_\_ September
- \_\_\_\_\_ 1988
- \_\_\_\_\_ last year
- \_\_\_\_\_ two years
- \_\_\_\_\_ last Friday
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9:30
- \_\_\_\_\_ three days
- \_\_\_\_\_ the first of January
- \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning of the term
- \_\_\_\_\_ the semester
- \_\_\_\_\_ the first day of January
- \_\_\_\_\_ almost four months
- \_\_\_\_\_ fifteen minutes
- \_\_\_\_\_ the semester started
- \_\_\_\_\_ a couple of hours
- \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday
- \_\_\_\_\_ about five weeks

# PRESENT PERFECT – (Since - For)

*Make sentences in present perfect tense with since or for.*

Example: he - not come here - last week He hasn't come here since last week.

I - be a teacher - six years I have been a teacher for six years.

1. he - be there - two years

---

2. I - live in Rome - I was born

---

3. I - not see you - 1988

---

4. She - not write to me - last year

---

5. I - work in that factory – 1987

---

6. they - not visit us - last February

---

7. it - not snow in our town - three years

---

8. my father - be ill - five months

---

9. he - be in prison - last month

---

10. I - study French - a long time

---

11. he - have that car - ages

---

12. I - wear this tie - over a year

---

13. she - work as a teacher - two years

---

14. they - not play football - a fortnight

---

15. we - be in the classroom - half an hour

---

16. nothing – happen - three days

---

17. I - not hear from him - last November

---

18. I - not eat anything – yesterday

---

19. nobody - come to our house - last Wednesday

---

20. he - be a manager - three years

---

21. she - not call me - last week

---

22. I - know him - my childhood

---

23. we - be sad - he died

---

24. he - not have an accident - three years

---

# PRESENT PERFECT – (Since - For)

*Make sentences in present perfect tense with since or for.*

Example: I haven't seen you. (Friday / 3 days)

**a) I haven't seen you SINCE Friday.**

**b) I haven't seen you FOR 3 days.**

1. We've been here. (an hour / 4 o'clock)

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

2. She hasn't spoken to me. (2 weeks / last week)

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

3. They've lived in this street. (1970 / a long time)

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

4. I haven't had time to do it. (last Monday / a few days)

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

5. We haven't bought a new one. (ages / many years)

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

6. I lived in Beykent in 1996, and I live in Beykent now.

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

7. I was at school in October, and I am at school now.

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

8. She liked him in 1991, and she likes him now.

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

9. I needed a new apartment in December, and I need one now.

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

5. My grandfather was sick last year, and he is still sick.

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

10. I knew him in 1990, and I still know him.

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

11. He wore jeans on Tuesday, and he's wearing jeans now (Saturday)

(since) \_\_\_\_\_

(for) \_\_\_\_\_

# PRESENT PERFECT – Just, Yet, Since, For

Fill in the blanks with JUST, YET, SINCE, and FOR.

1. a) He has done the washing up.

b) I have been ill\_ a week.

---

2. a) Tim hasn't called me\_.

b) She has\_ signed the contract.

---

3. a) The plane has\_ left the airport.

b) I haven't smoked a cigarette\_ two days.

---

4. a) He has been in the teachers' room\_ almost an hour.

5. b) We haven't been to the theatre\_ a year.

---

6. a) It hasn't rained in Turkiye\_ June.

b) She has worked as a secretary\_ ten years.

---

7. a) I haven't seen my aunt\_ last year.

b) I haven't had lunch\_.

---

8. a) I haven't met her\_ ages.

b) He hasn't posted the letter\_.

---

9. a) My penfriend hasn't written to me\_ a long time.

b) It's a long time\_ I saw her.

---

10. a) It's ages\_ he left his job.

b) My mother has\_ left home.

---

11. a) My father has worked for that firm\_ 1967.

b) My cat hasn't eaten anything\_ the weekend.

---

12. a) Has your uncle found his stolen car\_?

b) They have lived in Ankara\_ their first child was born.

---

# PRESENT PERFECT – How Long?

(a) A: *How long have you been* in this city?  
B: For five months.

(b) A: *How long has Ali had* a mustache?  
B: Since he was twenty-one years old.

(c) A: *How long have you known* Maria?  
B: Since the beginning of the school term.

Question form of the present perfect:  
**have + subject + past participle**

Answer the questions.

1. How long have you had your bike? **(since)**

---

2. How long have your parents lived in .....? **(since)**

---

3. How long have you studied English? **(since)**

---

4. How long has your father repaired the roof? **(since)**

---

5. How long have you waited for the bus? **(ten minutes)**

---

6. How long have you been at school? **(four hours)**

---

7. How long have you been a student at this school? **(1993)**

---

8. How long have you stayed in Marmaris? **(two months)**

---

9. How long have you had your school uniform? **(start this school)**

---

10. How long have you been in your hometown? **(you were born)**

---

11. How long have you known me? **(a long time)**

---

12. How long have you cleaned your house? **(two hours)**

---

13. How long has your uncle been abroad? **(1990)**

---

14. How long have your parents been married? **(1967)**

---

15. How long have you collected stamps? **(8 years old)**

---

16. How long has she watched TV? **(she got up)**

---

17. How long have you had driving lessons? **(the beginning of March)**

# PRESENT PERFECT – Wh -Questions

Ask questions.

1. \_\_\_\_\_

I've had my car for ten years.

2. \_\_\_\_\_

She has worked as a teacher since 1979.

3. \_\_\_\_\_

She has been in hospital for a week.

4. \_\_\_\_\_

They have been friends since high school.

5. \_\_\_\_\_

They have lived in New York since they bought a firm in Izmir.

6. \_\_\_\_\_

A friend of mine has translated a story book into English for a week.

7. \_\_\_\_\_

I haven't had a holiday since I became a teacher.

8. \_\_\_\_\_

Richard has been a teacher at primary school for more than ten years.

# PRESENT PERFECT - SIMPLE PAST TENSE

*Rewrite the following sentences using the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Use either simple past tense or present perfect tense.*

Examples: I (call) him last night. I called him last night.  
He (be) ill since last night. He has been ill since last night.

1. The lesson **(start)** ten minutes ago.

2. When you **(see)** him?

3. I **(drink)** coffee yesterday afternoon.

4. The postman just **(leave)**.

5. She never **(ride)** a camel before.

6. I **(travel)** with him several times.

7. In the end I **(find)** the key to the door.

8. I **(read)** that book twice.

9. What time you **(get)** up this morning?

10. you **(see)** my pen? I **(lose)** it.

11. The children **(not return)** from school yet.

12. He **(talk)** to him on Thursday.

13. I **(not)** see him since he **(get)** married.

14. How long ago the game **(begin)** ?

15. How long you **(know)** him?

16. you **(see)** him recently?

17. How long she **(be)** a nurse?

18. He **(not write)** to me since last year.

19. I can't find my dictionary. you **(see)** it?

20. He **(run)** two hours yesterday.

21. We **(hear)** that story before.

22. She **(work)** as a secretary for many years.

23. She **(not visit)** lately.

24. We **(move)** here last month.



B: \_\_\_\_\_

**9.** play table tennis – yesterday

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**10.** draw a picture - last Tuesday

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**11.** catch a fish - three months ago

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**12.** dig a grave - last summer

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**13.** run in a race - last week

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**14.** sing a song – yesterday

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**15.** forget to do homework - last Monday

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**16.** lose a pen - last month

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**17.** swim in a lake - last summer

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**18.** wear a hat - last winter

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**19.** see a camel - three months ago

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**20.** take photographs - last October

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**21.** have an accident - last month

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**22.** meet an Englishman – yesterday

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

**23.** buy a bicycle - last summer

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: \_\_\_\_\_

# PRESENT PERFECT – SIMPLE PAST

Put the verbs in the correct tense. Use the SIMPLE PAST or the PRESENT PERFECT:

1. \_\_Tim \_\_ (finish) his work yet?

---

2. ..... he ..... (finish) it yesterday?

---

3. They..... (just / go) out.

---

4. They ..... (go) out a minute ago.

---

5. .....Ann ..... (study) yesterday afternoon?

---

6. ..... you ..... (send) the letters yet?

---

7. ..... she ..... (call) him a week ago?

---

8. They..... (not / see) the film yet.

---

9. The train ..... (just / arrive).

---

10. .....you..... (ever / be) in a TV studio?

---

11. .....you and Tom ..... (enjoy) the party last night?

---

12. ..... you..... (not / finish) school last year?

---

13. I ..... (lose) my dictionary. I can't find it anywhere.

---

14. His hair looks short. He ..... (have) a haircut.

---

15. When ..... (he / give up) smoking?

---

16. Jane ..... (buy) her car two weeks ago.

---

17. My bicycle isn't here. Somebody ..... (take) it.

---

18. Why .....(Jim / not want) to play tennis last Friday?

---

19. The car looks clean. .....you..... (wash) it?

---

20. When we were on holiday, the weather .....(be) terrible.

# PRESENT PERFECT – SIMPLE PAST

Use THE SIMPLE PAST or THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE to fill in the blanks:

1. The young man ..... (never / be) to Paris, but he .....(read) a book about this city last year.

---

2. ..... you ..... (decide) where to go yet?

---

3. A: Have some tea, please. B: No, thank you. I ..... (just / have) two cups of tea.

---

4. Susan ..... (do) her homework before 10 o'clock but Jane ..... (not / write) a word until now.

---

5. A: ..... the plane ..... (land)? B: Yes, it ..... (land) ten minutes ago.

---

6. It ..... (not / rain) for a long time.

---

7. ..... you ..... (see) my dog? It..... (run away) this morning.

---

8. We ..... (meet) at a party a long time ago, but I .....(not / see) her since then.

---

9. I ..... (see) an interesting book in a bookshop yesterday, but I ..... (not / buy) it.

---

10. My friend ..... (fall) from the bicycle because he ..... (not / ride) one for ages.

---

11. His father ..... (die) in 1970, but he ..... (never / visit) his father's grave since that time.

---

12. They ..... (go) to America years ago, but none of them ..... (come) back since then.

---

13. A: ..... you ..... (speak) to an Englishman? B: Yes, I\_\_(have) a short conversation with one last night.

---

14. A: ..... you ever ..... (be) to Tatilya? B: Yes, I ..... (go) there two years ago.

---

15. Her mother ..... (buy) her a pair of new shoes yesterday.

---

16. The Prime Minister ..... (leave) for the USA an hour ago.

---

17. A: ..... you ..... (see) Jane recently? B: No, I ..... (see) her for a long time.

---

# PAST PERFECT TENSE

## PAST PERFECT

|  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) My parents <b>had already eaten</b> by the time I got home.<br>(b) Until yesterday, I <b>had never heard</b> about it.<br>(c) The thief simply walked in. Someone <b>had forgotten</b> to lock the door.   | The past perfect expresses an activity that was <i>completed before another activity or time in the past</i> .   |
| (d) Sam <b>had already left</b> when we got there.<br>(e) Sam <b>had left</b> before we got there.<br>(f) Sam <b>left</b> before we got there.<br>(g) After the guests <b>had left</b> , I went to bed.<br>(h) After the guests <b>left</b> , I went to bed. | In (d): <i>First</i> : Sam left.<br><i>Second</i> : We got there.*<br>If either <i>before</i> or <i>after</i> is used in the sentence, the past perfect is often not necessary because the time relationship is already clear. The simple past may be used, as in (f) and (h). Note: (e) and (f) have the same meaning; (g) and (b) have the same meaning. |

Combine the following sentences using simple past and past perfect tense. Use the conjunctions in brackets, too.

Examples: I finished school in 1987. I started to work in 1988. (after)

I started to work after I had finished school.

We got to the cinema at 9. The film started at 8.30. (when)

When we got to the cinema the film had started.

1. We arrived home at 9. She fell asleep at 8.45. (when)

2. He sold his house. Then he moved to another city. (after)

3. He had a shave. Then he left home. (before)

4. The policeman arrived at 9.15. The robbers ran away at 9.10. (when)

5. The bell rang. The students started to run. (as soon as)

6. The teacher came in when the bell rang. We cleaned the board before the bell. (when)

7. He left the army in 1987. He went abroad in 1988. (after)

8. We got to the station at 11.05. The train left at 11.00. (by the time)

9. The secretary typed the letter. Then she put it in an envelope. (after)

10. The student wrote the dialogue. Then he memorized it. (before)

11. The dentist pulled out the tooth. The man said it was the wrong tooth. (after)

12. The lesson finished. Everybody stopped writing before the bell. (when)

13. The doorkeeper opened the door. Everybody rushed in. (as soon as)

14. The policeman made the man talk. They found out everything. (once)

---

15. I went to bed. The telephone rang. (the moment after)

---

16. I told them not to be late. They came late again. (although)

---

17. The driver stopped. The policeman ordered him to stop. (because)

---

18. I finished military service. I started to work for a newspaper. (after)

---

19. The cat saw the mouse. It started to chase the mouse. (as soon as)

---

20. She finished answering the questions at 9. Everybody else did later. (before)

---

21. The man started the car. Then he drove off. (after)

---

22. The police put the man in prison. The man robbed a bank. (because)

---

23. He talked to the manager in the morning. He sent the goods in the afternoon. (before)

---

24. The film ended. He turned off the TV. (as soon as)

---

## PAST PERFECT TENSE

Combine the following sentences by using **AFTER / BEFORE**:

1. My mother took her umbrella. She went out.

---

2. Frank called me. I went to school.

---

3. I washed the dishes. I watched TV.

---

4. She washed her hands. She had lunch.

---

5. The boys bought a ball. They played football.

---

6. My mother made a cake. The guests came.

---

7. He put sugar in his tea. He drank it.

---

8. I got up. I had breakfast.

---

9. The children ran away. They broke the window.

---

10. I fastened my seat belt. The plane took off.

---

# SIMPLE PAST or PAST PERFECT TENSE?

Write the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Use **simple past** or **past perfect tense**.

Examples: a) When the fire brigade (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ they (put) \_\_\_\_\_ out the fire.

When the fire brigade arrived, they had put out the fire.

b) She (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ home after she (write) \_\_\_\_\_ a letter.

She left home after she had written a letter.

1. After they (leave) \_\_\_, we (go) \_\_\_ to bed.

---

2. When we (get) \_\_\_ there, the meeting \_\_\_ just (start) \_\_\_.

---

3. I (ask) \_\_\_ them why they (not come) \_\_\_ on time.

---

4. They (say) \_\_\_ the train (leave) \_\_\_ early.

---

5. We (go) \_\_\_ out as soon as we (have) \_\_\_ dinner.

---

6. I \_\_\_ never (see) \_\_\_ a camel until I (go) \_\_\_ to Saudi Arabia.

---

7. The car (be) \_\_\_ more expensive than we (expect) \_\_\_.

---

8. I (read) \_\_\_ the book after I (have) \_\_\_ dinner.

---

9. The workers (put) \_\_\_ out the fire before the firemen (arrive) \_\_\_.

---

10. We (hear) \_\_\_ that he (get) \_\_\_ married.

---

11. I (get) \_\_\_ up before the sun (rise) \_\_\_.

---

12. They (put) \_\_\_ him to prison though he (not do) \_\_\_ anything.

---

13. The police (arrest) \_\_\_ him because he (kill) \_\_\_ two people.

---

14. I (tell) \_\_\_ him not to use my pen but he (take) \_\_\_ it again.

---

15. He \_\_\_ already (fall) \_\_\_ asleep when we (return) \_\_\_ \_\_\_ home.

---

16. He (discover) \_\_\_ that the old man (sell) \_\_\_ all his property.

---

17. She (wonder) \_\_\_ why they (move) \_\_\_ to a smaller town.

---

18. Once the commander (say) \_\_\_\_ "fire", the soldiers (start) \_\_\_\_ to fire crazily.

---

19. After the police (question) \_\_\_\_\_ the man, they (send) \_\_\_\_\_ him to prison.

---

20. The man (be) \_\_\_\_\_ very disappointed when he (find) \_\_\_\_\_ out that his son (fail) \_\_\_\_\_.

---

21. I (lose) \_\_\_\_\_ the pen that my father (give) \_\_\_\_\_ me as a present.

---

22. Before they (move) \_\_\_\_\_ to Ankara, they (live) \_\_\_\_\_ in Bursa.

---

23. Everybody (fall) \_\_\_\_\_ asleep before the lecture (finish) \_\_\_\_\_.

---

24. By the time we (get) \_\_\_\_\_ to the airport, the plane (land) \_\_\_\_\_.

---

25. I \_\_\_\_\_ (worry) a lot about her before I \_\_\_. (hear) that she was safe.

---

26. I didn't like the flat. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) much smaller than I \_\_\_. (think) at first.

---

27. He told us he \_\_\_\_\_ (shoot) a big tiger.

---

28. They \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) tea after they \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) dinner.

---

29. She \_\_\_\_\_ just \_\_\_\_\_ (fold) the pink apron and placed it in a table drawer when the door \_\_\_\_\_ (open) and Joe \_\_\_\_\_ enter).

---

30. The police wanted to know why he \_\_\_\_\_ (bring) a gun to school.

---

31. After he \_\_\_\_\_ (work) at the hospital for two years he \_\_\_\_\_ (decide) to give up the job.

---

32. When I \_\_\_. (arrive) at the party John \_\_\_\_\_ already \_\_\_\_\_ (go) home.

---

33. We \_\_\_. (wait) until the match \_\_\_\_\_ (finish).

---

34. They \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the room before the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ (finish).

---

35. I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a new camera before I \_\_\_. (go) to London.

---

36. I \_\_\_\_\_ just \_\_\_\_\_ (turn off) the lights when the telephone \_\_\_\_\_ (ring).

---

37. \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ (know) her for a long time before they \_\_\_\_\_ (get) married?

---

38. He \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) down the hotel where they \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) their honeymoon years ago.

---

39. When we \_\_\_\_\_ (get) to the station the train \_\_\_\_\_. (already / leave).

---

40. He \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) at a table by the window where he \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a meal with Jane.

---

41. Why \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ (not / ask) her to wait and think again before she \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) Paris.

---

42. He was wondering why he \_\_\_\_\_ (let) her leave so easily.

---

43. He knew he \_\_\_\_\_ earn) that money with a great difficulty.

---

44. He \_\_\_\_\_ (have to) go to work by bus because his car \_\_\_\_\_ (break) down.

---

45. He \_\_\_\_\_ (angry) before he \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) my offer.

---

46. They \_\_\_\_\_ (go) home after they \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) their work.

---

47. She \_\_\_\_\_ (just / go) out when I called her.

---

48. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) all the pie before we got back.

---

49. He wondered why I \_\_\_\_\_ (not / visit) him before.

---

50. She said that she \_\_\_\_\_ (already / see) the Pyramids.

---

51. The fire \_\_\_\_\_ (spread) to the next building before the firemen \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive).

---

52. They drank small cups of coffee, after they \_\_\_\_\_. (finish) dinner.

---

53. He told me he \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) a young lion.

---

54. His mother \_\_\_\_\_ (worry) a lot about him before she \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) that he was safe.

---

55. I \_\_\_\_\_ go) to the theatre with my friends yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not / go) to the theatre for a year. We \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a very good time.

---

56. After they \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) their breakfast, they \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) for school.

---

57. Linda \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis after she \_\_\_\_\_ (do) her homework.

---

58. My father \_\_\_\_\_ (water) the flowers after he \_\_\_\_\_ clean) the car. After he \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ (water) the flowers, he \_\_\_\_\_ (have) dinner.

---

# FUTURE TENSE

|   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) I <b>am going to go</b> downtown tomorrow.<br>(b) Sue <b>is going to be</b> here tomorrow afternoon.<br>(c) We <b>are going to come</b> to class tomorrow morning.  | <b>Be going to</b> expresses (talks about) the future.<br>FORM: <b>am</b> } + <b>going + infinitive*</b><br><b>is</b><br><b>are</b>   |
| (d) I'm <b>not going to go</b> downtown tomorrow.<br>(e) Ann <b>isn't going to study</b> tonight.   | <b>NEGATIVE:</b> <b>be + not + going to</b>   |
| (f) "Are you <b>going to come</b> to class tomorrow?"<br>"No, I'm not."<br>(g) "Is Jim <b>going to be</b> at the meeting tomorrow?"<br>"Yes, he is."<br>(h) "What time <b>are</b> you <b>going to eat</b> dinner tonight?"<br>"Around six." | <b>QUESTION:</b> <b>be + subject + going to</b><br>A form of <b>be</b> is used in the short answer to a yes/no question with <b>be going to</b> , as in (f) and (g). (See Chart 1-9 for information about short answers with <b>be</b> .) |

## TIME EXPRESSIONS

| PAST   | FUTURE   |   |
|--|--|---|
| <i>yesterday</i>   | <i>tomorrow</i>  | <b>PAST:</b> It <i>rained yesterday</i> .<br><b>FUTURE:</b> It's <i>going to rain tomorrow</i> .  |
| <i>yesterday morning</i><br><i>yesterday afternoon</i><br><i>yesterday evening</i><br><i>last night</i>  | <i>tomorrow morning</i><br><i>tomorrow afternoon</i><br><i>tomorrow evening</i><br><i>tomorrow night</i>   | <b>PAST:</b> I <i>was</i> in class <b><i>yesterday morning</i></b> .<br><b>FUTURE:</b> I'm <i>going to be</i> in class <b><i>tomorrow morning</i></b> .   |
| <i>last week</i><br><i>last month</i><br><i>last year</i><br><i>last weekend</i><br><i>last spring</i><br><i>last summer</i><br><i>last fall</i><br><i>last winter</i><br><i>last Monday, etc.</i> | <i>next week</i><br><i>next month</i><br><i>next year</i><br><i>next weekend</i><br><i>next spring</i><br><i>next summer</i><br><i>next fall</i><br><i>next winter</i><br><i>next Monday, etc.</i>         | <b>PAST:</b> Mary <i>went</i> downtown <b><i>last week</i></b> .<br><b>FUTURE:</b> Mary <i>is going to go</i> downtown <b><i>next week</i></b> .<br><br><b>PAST:</b> Bob <i>graduated</i> from high school <b><i>last spring</i></b> .<br><b>FUTURE:</b> Ann <i>is going to graduate</i> from high school <b><i>next spring</i></b> . |
| <i>... minutes ago</i><br><i>... hours ago</i><br><i>... days ago</i><br><i>... weeks ago</i><br><i>... months ago</i><br><i>... years ago</i>   | <i>in ... minutes</i> (from now)<br><i>in ... hours</i> (from now)<br><i>in ... days</i> (from now)<br><i>in ... weeks</i> (from now)<br><i>in ... months</i> (from now)<br><i>in ... years</i> (from now) | <b>PAST:</b> I <i>finished</i> my homework <b><i>five minutes ago</i></b> .<br><b>FUTURE:</b> Pablo <i>is going to finish</i> his homework <b><i>in five minutes</i></b> .  |

# GOING TO FUTURE

Change the following sentences to **going to** future.

Example: I drink tea every morning.

I am going to drink tea tomorrow morning.

I get up early every morning.

I am going to get up early tomorrow morning.

1. He writes an essay every week.

2. He washes office every Saturday.

3. I have lunch at a restaurant every day.

4. They play table tennis every afternoon.

5. We go to England every summer.

6. He shaves every morning.

7. She runs every morning.

8. He listens to the news at 8 o'clock.

9. They start work at 9 o'clock.

10. She watches TV every evening.

11. I listen to the radio every day.

12. The teacher tells us a joke every week.

13. The milkman comes at 7 o'clock every morning.

14. We have an exam every week.

15. I study English every night.

16. She washes the dishes every night.

17. The children play football every day.

18. They paint their house every year.

19. She visits her parents every week.

20. She drinks milk every morning.

21. He buys a newspaper every morning.

22. They walk to work every morning.

23. He calls his parents every evening.

# GOING TO FUTURE (question form)

Ask questions and give answers in **going to** future tense as in the example.

Example: you – sleep – study      Are you going to sleep? No, I am not. What are you going to do? I am going to study.

1. you - watch TV - read the newspaper.

2. you – shave - have a haircut.

3. she – run - play tennis.

4. he - drink tea - coffee.

5. they - play table tennis - football.

6. you - brush your teeth - wash the dishes.

7. he - eat a sandwich - a hamburger.

8. she - type the letter - answer the telephone.

9. you - wash your car - paint the doors.

10. they – ski - skate.

11. she - ride her bicycle - a horse.

12. he - buy a car - a bike.

13. you – walk - have a rest.

14. they - win the match - lose the match.

15. dog – bark - sleep.

16. they - listen to the radio - study English .

17. you - stay at home - go out.

18. he - ask a question - tell a joke.

19. she - play chess - have a drink.

20. you - phone him - write a letter.

21. she - draw a picture - read a book.

22. they - watch the match on TV - go to the stadium.

23. you – sleep - help my mother.

24. he - wash his hands - wash his face.

# GOING TO FUTURE

Rewrite each sentence or question with GOING TO:

Example: Joe plans to buy a new computer next year.

... *Joe is going to buy a new computer next year* \_\_\_\_

1. We don't plan to play tennis this weekend.

---

2. Does Nick plan to join the sports club?

---

3. What are your plans for next summer?

---

4. Look! That tree is about to fall over!

---

5. Do you plan to work hard this year?

---

6. I don't intend to get a new car.

---

7. The forecast for tomorrow is rain.

---

8. Do Mike and Pat plan to make sandwiches for the party?

---

9. I think it's about to snow.

---

# FUTURE TENSE – Will (Positive)

A- Change the following sentences to future tense with **will**.

**Example:** He goes to work at 8 o'clock every morning.  
They stay up late **every evening**.

He will go to work at 8 o'clock tomorrow morning.  
They will stay up late this evening.

Every morning - tomorrow morning

Every evening - this evening/tomorrow morning

1. Joseph does his homework every afternoon.

2. My father pays the bills.

3. My brother plays computer games every night.

4. David washes his car.

5. I phone my uncle every week.

6. My sister combs her hair every morning.

7. She helps my mother.

8. She listens to the radio every evening.

9. She types the letters in the afternoon.

10. The baby goes to bed at 9 every night.

11. The bus leaves at 10.50.

12. The car goes fast.

13. The children play in the playground.

14. The film starts after the news.

15. The job is easy.

16. The photographer takes pictures.

17. They are in Paris.

---

18. They go to France every year.

---

19. They go to school.

---

20. They sit in the sun every afternoon.

---

21. We have lunch at 12.30.

---

22. We study English every evening.

---

23. He is angry with us.

---

24. He is very happy today.

---

## FUTURE TENSE – Will (Negative/Questions)

B- Change the sentences to question and negative.

Example: He goes to work at 8 o'clock every morning.

Will he go to work at 8 o'clock tomorrow morning?

He won't go to work at 8 o'clock tomorrow morning.

Every morning - tomorrow morning

Every evening - this evening/tomorrow morning

1. Joseph does his homework every afternoon.

---

2. My father pays the bills.

---

3. My brother plays computer games every night.

---

4. David washes his car.

---

5. I phone my uncle every week.

---

6. My sister combs her hair every morning.

---

7. She helps my mother.

---

8. She listens to the radio every evening.

---

**9.** She types the letters in the afternoon.

---

**10.** The baby goes to bed at 9 every night.

---

**11.** The bus leaves at 10.50.

---

**12.** The car goes fast.

---

**13.** The children play in the playground.

---

**14.** The film starts after the news.

---

**15.** The job is easy.

---

**16.** The photographer takes pictures.

---

**17.** They are in New York.

---

**18.** They go to France every year.

---

**19.** They go to school.

---

**20.** They sit in the sun every afternoon.

---

**21.** We have lunch at 12.30.

---

**22.** We study English every evening.

---

**23.** He is angry with us.

---

**24.** He is very happy today.

---

# GOING TO FUTURE & WILL

## WILL VERSUS BE GOING TO

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>To express a PREDICTION</b> —either <b>WILL</b> or <b>BE GOING TO</b> is used;   |   |
| (a) According to the weather report, it <b>will be</b> cloudy tomorrow.<br>(b) According to the weather report, it <b>is going to be</b> cloudy tomorrow.<br>(c) Be careful! <b>You'll hurt</b> yourself!<br>(d) Watch out! <b>You're going to</b> hurt yourself! | When the speaker is making a prediction (a statement about something s/he thinks will be true or will occur in the future), either <b>will</b> or <b>be going to</b> is possible.<br>There is no difference in meaning between (a) and (b).<br>There is no difference in meaning between (c) and (d).   |
| <b>To express a PRIOR PLAN</b> —only <b>BE GOING TO</b> is used;  |   |
| (e) A: Why did you buy this paint?<br>B: <b>I'm going to paint</b> my bedroom tomorrow.<br><br>(f) I talked to Bob yesterday. He is tired of taking the bus to work. <b>He's going to buy</b> a car. That's what he told me.                                      | When the speaker is expressing a prior plan (something the speaker intends to do in the future because in the past s/he has made a plan or decision to do it), only <b>be going to</b> is used.*<br>In (e): Speaker B has made a prior plan. She decided to paint her bedroom last week. She intends to paint her bedroom tomorrow.<br>In (f): The speaker knows Bob's intention to buy a car. Bob made the decision in the past and he intends to act on this decision in the future. <b>Will</b> is not appropriate in (e) and (f). |
| <b>To express WILLINGNESS</b> —only <b>WILL</b> is used:  |   |
| (g) A: The phone's ringing.<br>B: <b>I'll get</b> it.<br><br>(h) A: I don't understand this problem.<br>B: Ask your teacher about it. <b>She'll help</b> you.   | In (g): Speaker B is saying: "I am willing, I am happy to get the phone." He is not making a prediction. He has made no prior plan to answer the phone. He is, instead, volunteering to answer the phone and uses <b>will</b> to show his willingness.<br>In (h): Speaker B feels sure about the teacher's willingness to help. <b>Be going to</b> is not appropriate in (g) and (h).   |

## Fill in WILL or BE GOING TO:

**Example:** A: Why do you need so much sugar?                    B: I'm going to    make a cake.

1. A: Oh no! I've left my purse at home and I haven't got any money on me! B: Don't worry. I    lend you some.

---



---

2. A: I don't know how to use this mixer. B: That's OK. I    show you.

---



---

3. A: Why are all these people gathered here? B: The Prime Minister    open the new hospital ward.

---



---

4. A: Did you remember to buy the magazine I asked for? B: Sorry, I didn't. I    buy it when I go out again.

---



---

5. A: What's that on your curtains? B: It's a stain. I    take them to the dry cleaner's tomorrow.

---



---

6. A: These bags are very heavy. I can't lift them. B: I    carry them for you.

---



---

7. A: I hear you're going to Leeds University in September. B: Yes, I    study French and German.

---

---

8. A: Why don't you tidy your room? B: I    play football in ten minutes, so I haven't got time.

---

---

9. A: How can we get all this home? B: I    ask James to come and help.

---

---

10. She has bought some wool. She    knit a sweater.

---

---

11. A: This problem is very difficult. B: I    help you to solve it.

---

---

12. A: Why are you taking down all the pictures? B: I    paint the room.

---

---

13. I    climb that mountain one day.

---

---

14. Look at that young man. He looks very pale. He    faint.

---

---

15. A: Why are you buying that spade? B: I    plant some trees in my garden at the back of the house.

---

---

16. She    get better. There are positive signs.

---

---

17. I'm hungry. I    have something to eat. I    be 38 years old next week.

---

---

18. A: Why are you turning on the television? B: I    (watch) the news.

---

---

19. A: Oh, I've just realized. I haven't got any money. B: Don't worry. That's no problem. I    (lend) you some.

---

---

20. Those clouds are very black, aren't they? I think it    (rain).

---

---

21. A: I've got a terrible headache. B: Have you? Wait here and I    (get) an aspirin for you.

---

---

**22.** A: Why are you filling that bucket with water?

B: I \_\_\_ (wash) the car.

---

---

**23.** A: I've decided to re-paint this room. B: Oh, have you? What colour \_\_\_ (you / paint) it?

---

---

**24.** A: Look! There's smoke coming out of that house. It's on fire! B: Good heavens! I \_\_\_ call the fire-brigade immediately.

---

---

**25.** A: The ceiling in this room doesn't look very safe, does it? B: No, it looks as if it \_\_\_ (fall) down.

---

---

**26.** A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping? B: Yes, I \_\_\_ (buy) something for dinner.

---

---

**27.** A: I can't work out how to use this camera. B: It's quite easy. I \_\_\_ (show) you.

---

---

**28.** A: What would you like to drink – tea or coffee? B: I \_\_\_. (have) tea, please.

---

---

**29.** A: Has George decided on what to do when he leaves school? B: Oh yes. Everything is planned. He \_\_\_ (have) a holiday for a few weeks and then he \_\_\_ (start) a computer programming course.

---

---

---

# WH QUESTIONS

## WH QUESTIONS – How much /How many

1. \_ apples did you buy?

---

2. \_\_ do you weigh?

---

3. \_\_ does it cost to fly to America?

---

4. \_\_ does it cost to fly to America?

---

5. \_\_ brothers and sisters do you have?

---

6. \_\_ was your computer?

---

7. \_\_ photos did you take?

---

8. \_\_water did he drink?

---

9. \_\_ people did you invite?

---

10. \_\_ We need some tea. \_\_ do we need?

---

11. We need some eggs. \_\_do we need?

---

12. We need some paper. \_\_do we need?

---

13. We need some money. \_\_do we need?

---

14. \_\_cigarettes do you smoke a day?

---

15. \_\_packets of cigarettes do you have?

---

16. \_\_work have you got to do?

---

17. \_\_sleep did you get last night?

---

18. \_\_children have you got?

---

19. \_\_bottles of wine are there in the cellar?

---

20. \_\_English grammar do you know?

21. \_ Americans do you know?

22. \_ sugar do you take in your tea?

23. \_ apples do you eat in an average week?

24. \_ fruit do you eat in an average week?

25. \_ real friends do you have?

26. \_ chairs are there in your house?

27. \_ furniture do you have?

28. \_ traffic was there on the motorway today?

29. \_ times must I tell you?

30. \_ mistakes did you make on the test?

## WH QUESTIONS – How much /How many

According to the given answers, use **How many** - plural noun or **How much** – uncountable noun.

Example: \_ is this house? It's 22 years old.

How many years is this house? It's 22 years old.

1. A:\_ have we got? B: We've got only one bottle.

2. A:\_ are there? B:Three.

3. A:\_ is there? B:We have got two steaks.

4. A:\_ have we got? B:We haven't got any.

5. A:\_ have we got? B:Enough.

6. A:\_ have we got? B:Some.

7. A:\_ are in your bag? B:Six.

8. A:\_ have we got? B:We haven't got a lot.

9. A:\_ are there in the garden? B:Two.

10. A:\_ have they got? B:Two girls and a boy.

11. A:\_ have we got? B:About one and a half litre.

# WH QUESTIONS

Ask information questions beginning with the words in brackets.

Examples: He is running. (What) What is he doing?  
She went to Germany. (Where) Where did she go?

1. They are eating something. (What)

2. She is going to sleep. (What)

3. He got up at 7.30. (What time)

4. He sometimes plays tennis. (How often)

5. She is going to buy some tea. (How much)

6. They were at home. (Where)

7. He sold his car last year. (When)

8. They are going to come next week. (When)

9. They ran very fast. (How)

10. She visits her grandparents every week. (Whom)

11. The police found the stolen car. (Who)

12. He bought three books. (How many)

13. He didn't come because he was ill. (Why)

14. There are a lot of people on the plane. (How many)

15. The children are playing a game. (What)

16. He usually drinks tea. (What)

17. She came home at 5.30. (What time)

18. There were some cars in front of the house. (How many)

19. He needs some time. (How much)

20. The cat is under the table. (Where)

21. He sent the letters. (What)

22. He is going to have dinner at home. (Where)

23. The boy is crying. (Who)

# WH QUESTIONS (Information questions)

Ask information questions for the underlined words.

Example: They work in a factory. Where do they work?

He bought a hat. What did he buy?

1. The teacher came at 8.30.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. They will come back tomorrow.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The dog is barking.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. She types 90 words a minute.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. He will be in Ankara tomorrow.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. He has been married for ten years.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The pictures are on the wall.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The lesson began ten minutes ago.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. My parents live in a small village.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. I was sleeping when the alarm clock went off.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. He is going to do it very quickly.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. She needs some sugar.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. I have got two brothers.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. The game has just started.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. He walks ten kilometers every Sunday.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. It takes me ten minutes to walk to school.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. It took him two hours to answer the questions.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. He does homework every evening.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. They play football on Saturday.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. He sold his car because he didn't have any money.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. He phoned his father.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. George often has a bath.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. He ate three hamburgers.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. He fell asleep during the lecture.  
\_\_\_\_\_
25. He had dinner at 8:00.  
\_\_\_\_\_

26. He left the restaurant at 9:00.

27. He was looking for his passport.

28. I baked an apple pie.

29. I came home by train.

30. I can't understand Hans because I don't know German.

31. I lost my wallet while I was skating.

32. I read two books every month.

33. I stayed for a week

34. I visited my cousin.

35. Mike eats corn-flakes for breakfast every morning.

36. My parents never smoke cigarettes.

37. Peter and Rob go to school by service bus.

38. Sam is doing his homework in his room.

39. She cried because her dog ran away.

40. She has lunch at home.

41. Mary met her friend.

42. She went to the beach.

43. She wrote a letter to her mother.

44. The teacher is writing some examples on the board.

45. They covered their eyes because they were scared.

46. They spoke Russian.

47. They studied all morning.

48. They swam in the ocean.

49. Tom is watching a film now.

50. We sent a postcard to our teacher.

51. We talked about my job.

52. We took a lot of photographs.

# WH/INFORMATION QUESTIONS

Ask information questions for the **underlined** words.

**Examples:** He is sleeping. **What** is he doing?  
They stayed at home. **Where** did they stay?

1. I used to live in America.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. He has been ill for three days.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I'll call him tomorrow.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. He couldn't finish it because he was busy.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. She has breakfast at home.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. They go to the library twice a week.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. He ran ten kilometers.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I'd like to be a dentist.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. They were studying when the bell rang.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. She can type 75 words a minute.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. He has been learning English since 1990.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. When I got to the station, the train had left.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. They are going to paint the house.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. You mustn't smoke at a gas station.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. He has to work hard.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. It took me half an hour to get to the airport.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. The manager dismissed the secretary.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. The Whites live on the second floor.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. They had to cancel the meeting.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. The customs officer is searching my suitcase.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. A lot of people died of cancer.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. She needs a lot of coffee.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. I lost a few keys.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. They will be working this time tomorrow.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# WH QUESTIONS – Answer / Question

**Ask questions.**

**Example:** Writing poems.

What do you like doing in your free time?

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
Five times a week.
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
The Sun does.
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
Before I go to bed.
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
I did.
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
Forty-five minutes.
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
My sister can.
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
To buy a ticket for the coach.
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
Since I was born.
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
For ages.
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, I have bought a new tie yesterday.
11. \_\_\_\_\_  
Ten days ago.
12. \_\_\_\_\_  
It is four years since I started to learn English.
13. \_\_\_\_\_  
No, thank you. I can manage.
14. \_\_\_\_\_  
Yes, it makes me happy.
15. \_\_\_\_\_  
Dangerously.
16. \_\_\_\_\_  
In 1938.
17. \_\_\_\_\_  
I can't lift this basket. (offer)
18. \_\_\_\_\_  
While I was sleeping.
19. \_\_\_\_\_  
Because of his illness.

# WH QUESTIONS – READING PASSAGE –

## Answer / Question

Read the text. Write the questions below about Tamsin's holiday:

Last September Tamsin went to Bali. She went by plane and stayed in a big hotel. It was very hot, so she swam every day. In the evenings she went to different restaurants, the food was very good. She met some nice people and every night she danced with them at the disco. She was happy because she wasn't alone.

**Example:** Where did she go?

Bali.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
Last September.
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
By plane.
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
In a big hotel.
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
It was very hot.
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
She swam.
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
It was very good.
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
Some nice people.

# WH QUESTIONS – READING PASSAGE

## Answer / Question

Read the passage and ask questions:

Janet Johnson is a film actress. She made several animal films. She is talking about an elephant called HEKIMA.

"I met Hekima when I went to Africa seven years ago. We were in Tanzania and we were making a film about elephants. When we arrived, we saw three young elephants. They were playing together. Hekima was small, friendly and intelligent. We called her Hekima because it means "wisdom". Hekima was a great actress, and the film made her famous. After we finished the film we left Africa. I thought I'd never see Hekima again. But she left Africa, too. She came to a zoo in the USA. I was working in New York when I heard about that. She was happy when she saw me. She was playing happily. I think she remembered me."

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Janet went to Africa seven years ago.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Janet was making a film in Tanzania.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

The elephants were playing when they arrived.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Because Hekima was an intelligent elephant.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

It means "wisdom".

6. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Hekima was in a zoo in the USA while Janet was working in New York.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Hekima was playing when Janet went to see her.

# WH QUESTIONS - Mixed

Answer the questions. Write long answers to the .

**Example:** A: Aren't you thirsty? (- / just) **B:** No, I am not. I have just drunk a glass of water. \_\_

1. Can you lend me your ruler? (-)

2. Did you see anyone on your way home last night? (+)

3. Do you think I could borrow your English dictionary? (-)

4. Do you think you could give me some money? (-)

5. Does collecting stamps interest you? (+)

6. Does collecting stamps interest you? (+)

7. Have you ever fallen asleep in class? When?

8. Have you ever visited one of your teachers? Who? When?

9. How can a housewife keep fit?

10. How can you travel without paying any money?

11. How did you finish doing your homework in ten minutes?

12. How did you spend your day yesterday?

13. How did you spend your free time last weekend?

14. How do students have to behave each other at school?

15. How do you feel when you see a snake?

16. How do you speak your language?

17. How do you think you can be very rich?

18. How heavy are you?

19. How long ago did you first meet your deskmate?

20. How long ago did you get married? (ten years)

---

21. How long ago were you a student at primary school?

---

22. How long can your father stay out at nights?

---

23. How long did it take you to write the invitation cards?

---

24. How long did you have to study English yesterday?

---

25. How long did you play with your toys last night?

---

26. How long do you have to study at school in a day? (seven hours)

---

27. How long does the compulsory education last in your country? (8)

---

28. How long have you been interested in playing the piano? (since)

---

29. How long have you had your watch? (since)

---

30. How long would you like to watch TV?

---

31. How many questions did your teachers ask you in the last quiz? (120 / in passive)

---

32. How many words can a person type in a minute? (120)

---

33. How much did you spend on your books last week? (A lot of money / in passive)

---

34. I always feel excited before an exam. What do you advise me to do?

---

35. I have a terrible headache. What shall I do?

---

36. Is Arabic spoken in Italy?

---

37. May I use your scissors? (-)

---

38. Must you have a haircut every day?

---

39. My eyesight isn't good. What shall I do? (advice)

---

40. Shall we have a hot drink? (+)

---

---

41. She is very fat. What would you do in her position?

---

42. Was the radio invented by Marconi? (active)

---

43. What are they doing in the kitchen at the moment? (passive)

---

44. What are you doing at the weekend?

---

45. What are you responsible for?

---

46. What can't a student do on schooldays?

---

47. What can't you afford to buy? Why? (too)

---

48. What can't you do without a dictionary?

---

49. What caused you to get excited a few minutes ago?

---

50. What caused you to go back home? (gerund)

---

51. What causes a student to fail an exam?

---

52. What causes the traffic accidents in the world most? (gerund)

---

53. What couldn't you do when you were five years old?

---

54. What did they buy for the party? (passive)

---

55. What did you have for dinner last night?

---

56. What did you use to do when you were five years old?

---

57. What did your father give you this money for? (infinitive of purpose)

---

58. What do they make a carpet from? (wool)

---

59. What do you hate doing on Saturdays?

---

60. What do you need to make a cake?

---

61. What do you think how your parents felt when they got married?

---

62. What do you think is the best hobby for a housewife?

---

63. What do you want your parents let you do? (in passive)

---

64. What does the board in the classroom need?

---

65. What does your best friend look like?

---

66. What does your mother stir the soup with while cooking?(ladle)

---

67. What does your teacher say to you before he starts the lesson?

---

68. What excites you? (gerund)

---

69. What happened to your sister? ( in passive)

---

70. What have you been doing at this school for a long time?

---

71. What haven't you done for a long time?

---

72. What if the police didn't come on time?

---

73. What if you forgot the address you want to write on the envelope?

---

74. What if you learn English well?

---

75. What if you were alone on an island?

---

76. What is a cat's biggest pleasure?

---

77. What is a dentist's? (relative)

---

78. What is a fork? (relative)

---

79. What is a hijacker? (relative)

---

80. What is a lift used for? (in active)

---

81. What is a waiter? (relative)

---

**82.** What is an aquarium? (relative)

---

**83.** What is an orchard? (relative)

---

**84.** What is difficult for your grandfather to do?

---

**85.** What is forbidden to do at school? (gerund)

---

**86.** What is necessary to go abroad? (gerund)

---

**87.** What is the difference between a bird and a turtle? (2 sentences / use BUT)

---

**88.** What is the main problem of the people who live in your city?

---

**89.** What is the opposite of "DARK"?

---

**90.** What is the thing which makes holes in paper called?

---

**91.** What is the use of graduating from a well-known university?

---

**92.** What is your biggest dream?

---

**93.** What kind of books do they sell in that bookstore? (relative)

---

**94.** What kind of boys are called "bad-tempered"?

---

**95.** What kind of children are preferred to be friends with? (relative)

---

**96.** What kind of city do you want to live in?

---

**97.** What kind of films are worth watching?

---

**98.** What kind of people are called "bad-tempered"?

---

**99.** What kind of people do you think can play chess well? (relative)

---

**100.** What kind of school does your father want you to graduate from? (relative)

---

**101.** What kind of students are called "intelligent"? (relative)

---

**102.** What kind of students learn English fast?

---

**103.** What kind of teacher do you think your teacher is?

---

**104.** What makes you feel excited?

---

**105.** What shall I buy for my English teacher on the teachers' day? (-) (If I./ -)

---

**106.** What was your hometown like three years ago? (Compare / (not) as...as)

---

**107.** What were you doing when it started to snow? (go to school)

---

**108.** What will happen if you don't water the plants?

---

**109.** What will you do when you are bored?

---

**110.** What would happen if you didn't pass the test? (What if...)

---

**111.** What would you do if you found a wallet full of money on the bus?

---

**112.** When are you taken to the cinema by your parents? (when)

---

**113.** When did the first President of your country die?

---

**114.** When did your mother bum her hand? (while)

---

**115.** When do you think you can have a rest? (after)

---

**116.** When do you think your father is going to allow you to go out alone at nights? (when)

---

**117.** When do you usually laugh? (when)

---

**118.** When will you go out? (as soon as)

---

**119.** Where would you like to be taught English? Why?

---

**120.** Which boy was punished by the teacher yesterday? (relative / whose)

---

**121.** Which chair belongs to you? (relative)

---

**122.** Which date is important for your country's people? (relative)

---

**123.** Which singer does your sister want to meet? (participle)

---

124. Who designed the highest building in your country? (I don't know...)

---

125. Who did you punish this morning? (in passive)

---

126. Who has got much more money than you? Why? (compare)

---

127. Who is the most famous person you have ever met?

---

128. Who is your homework checked by? (active)

---

129. Who was awarded by the principal? (present participle)

---

130. Who was in the classroom when you opened the door to call her? (-)

---

131. Whose dog was chosen the first? (the woman / white dress)

---

132. Why are you going to look for a job? (to)

---

133. Why can your father stay out as long as he wants? (enough)

---

134. Why can't you have a rest as soon as you go home?

---

135. Why couldn't you be at school on time?

---

136. Why couldn't you do your homework? (...so... that...)

---

137. Why couldn't you eat the apple I gave you?

---

138. Why couldn't you read the book which I gave you two days ago?

---

139. Why did you go to the bank? (to)

---

140. Why didn't you wear your glasses?

---

141. Why didn't your deskmate help you answer the questions in the workbook?

---

142. Why do you like being at school?

---

# TENSE REVISION

Complete the sentences. Use the correct tense of the verbs given:

1. If she **(see)** me, she **(get)** angry with me, because I had promised to call her out but I didn't.

---

2. He **(stop / smoke)** since he **(have)** a heart attack.

---

3. As soon as she **(finish / change)** the baby's nappy, she **(take)** the children to school.

---

4. He said his car    already **(mend)**.

---

5. She said she **(open)** her first exhibition the following month.

---

6. Mary and Joe want **(go)** to the shore which **(sound)** like a good idea to me.

---

7. He **(not / wake up)** on time unless he **(use)** an alarm clock.

---

8. I **(play)** the piano since I **(be)** six.

---

9. **(not / look)** behind you. I think, someone **(follow)** us.

---

10. They **(wait)** right in front of the hospital **(hear)** a piece of news, at the moment.

---

11. Before Christmas all the shops and houses **(decorate)** with cards and Christmas trees. Presents **(buy)** for the relatives and friends.

---

---

12. Linda **(look)** very happy now, because her boyfriend **(just / give)** her an engagement ring.

---

13. Dinner **(must / cook)** before we **(go)** out.

---

14. The old man **(be)** in prison for twenty years, by the time he **(die)** last year.

---

15. When Jane **(arrive)** late for the interview, she **(realize)** that the Director **(leave)**.

---

16.    you **(see)** Ann this morning? **(It's still morning.)**

---

17.    you **(see)** Ann this morning? **(It's evening.)**

---

18. I **(try)** to learn English for three years but I **(not / succeed)**.

---

19. After he (decide / give up) smoking, he (begin / carry) a pocket of sweets in his pocket (prevent) him from smoking.

---

20. He must have a break. He (drive) for hours.

---

21. My cousin, Tom (just / finish) his military service.

---

22. He (look) for a good job since then. Yesterday he (receive) a letter from his old boss. In his letter, he says he needs him again, but Tom (not / want / work) with him. Because they (have) some problems before he (leave) his job.

---

---

---

23. After they (learn) the new words last term, they (start) the course book.

---

24. Please don't disturb us, we (record) the Director's conversation.

---

25. Just as I (get up) my brother (take) a photo of me.

---

26. We are quite anxious about Jane now. She (leave) home a fortnight ago to spend her vacation with her friends but she (write) to us yet.

---

---

27. They (live) in bad conditions since the war (start).

---

28. Before I (come) to the USA, I (study) English in my own country.

---

29. I (not / have) any trouble with my car so far.

---

30. The building at the top of the hill (build) in 1920. A number of changes (make) since then.

---

31. When the boss (come) in the office, the letters (type) by the secretary.

---

32. Barbara is a writer. She \_\_\_ already (write) several novels.

---

33. A few years ago, she (give) the Pulitzer Prize.

---

34. Tom's father (go / swim) everyday. He says swimming (be) really good to keep fit.

---

35. Everybody (know) him as an honest man since he (start / live) here.

---

36. A: What is the crowd?

B: A little boy (kidnap) by two men and the police (look) for them along the river since then.

---

---

37. All dinner. (eat) before they (finish) the conversation.

---

38. As it (rain), a car accident (happen) on Main Street.

---

39. The bills (pay) yet.

---

40. The tourists (wait) for hours at the airport by the time their plane (take off).

---

41. Most of the houses. (pull) down last month, but they (not / touch) the old shop at the corner yet.

---

42. He (be) in different countries before he (arrest) by the police.

---

43. I (never / eat) Chinese food. I (be) very excited now because tomorrow night we (go) to a Chinese Restaurant. My mother (phone) the restaurant now for reservations.

---

---

44. David (drive) a taxi (earn) money.

---

45. A: Would you like (listen) to music?

B: Yes, of course. I (want / hear) Sting's latest cassette.

---

---

46. Alice (be) upset last night because her father (not / let) her (give) a party at home.

---

47. Tarkan (give) a concert next month.

---

48. A: Mmm. The cake (smell) delicious. B: Yes, my mother (just / make) it. We (like / have) tea at 5:00 pm everyday.

---

---

49. A: \_\_\_\_ your uncle. (work) that company?

B: Yes, he \_\_\_\_ (work) here since he (come) back from the USA. He (stay) there for three years and (work) as an accountant. But now, he (want / change) his job. He (look for) another job at present. He (have) a job interview next Tuesday.

---

---

---

---

50. How long \_\_\_\_ you (know) that teacher (wear) a white shirt and a brown jacket?

---

51. A: Where (be) your friends?

B: They (sit) at the cafe (wait) for us.

---

---

52. These magazines (read) by 1.000.000 people every week.

---

53. Where \_\_ the cars (sell) in this town?

---

54. The trees (must / cut) once a day.

---

55. Wait a minute! I (have) a bath.

---

56. This carpet (already / clean).

---

57. Nobody (eat) breakfast yet.

---

58. \_\_ the car (check) by the mechanic yesterday?

---

59. The helicopter (fly) to Izmir when it suddenly (crash) last month.

---

60. How many books (sell) so far this month?

---

61. Your watch (mend) at the moment.

---

62. While Mr. Jackson (cross) the road yesterday, she (hit) by a truck.

---

63. A new school (build) next to the bank next month.

---

64. Mike (live) in the same place since he \_\_\_\_\_ (come) to London.

---

65. This hospital (build) in 1980.

---

66. Mary (have) a bath before she (call) by one of her friends yesterday.

---

67. Listen! An old tune (play) on the radio.

---

68. Nobody (help) Mr. Green while the garage (paint).

---

69. The accountant (look) sad because the bills (pay) yet.

---

70. He felt sorry when he (realize) that his stamp collection (steal).

---

71. If I (be) him, I (not / treat) my father like that. He will be sorry for that in the future.

---

72. The house (paint) when it began to rain yesterday.

---

73. His shirt looks dirty. I think it (not / clean) since last Tuesday.

---

74. Sally (not / be) at home now. She (just / go) out.

---

75. If you took these pills, you (get) well.

---

76. (Can / he / play) football when he was ten years old?

---

77. He often (bring) me flowers.

---

78. (you / meet) Paul yesterday?

---

79. Father (work) in the garden now.

---

80. What (you / do) at the moment?

---

81. Mr. Jones (paint) his house last month.

---

82. She (go) to school on foot every day.

---

83. It (be) hot yesterday.

---

84. The baby (not / sleep) now.

---

85. He never (drive) fast.

---

86. She (leave) Paris in 1987.

---

87. She always (go) to church on Sunday.

---

88. I buy) a new bicycle last week.

---

89. My family (go) to the theatre yesterday.

---

90. Tom (live) in London three years ago.

---

91. My mother (make) some coffee now.

---

92. Sam (go) to the circus yesterday.

---

93. I (talk) on the telephone at the moment.

---

94. Sally always (help) her mother in the house.

---

95. I (have) dinner in a restaurant last Friday.

**96. Listen! The birds (sing) in the garden.**

97. I often (buy) fruit from the greengrocer's.

98. My mother (drink) tea now.

99. Look at Tom and Jim! They (walk) up the hill.

100. That man (laugh) at the moment.

101. The cat (play) with a ball now.

**102.** We always (wear) warm clothes in winter.

**103.** He often (eat) a sandwich at lunchtime.

**104.A: Did you hear the accident?**

B: No, what (happen)?

A: A cyclist (hit) by a taxi driver in front of the post office.

B: OK, then?

A: Someone (call) an ambulance and the cyclist (take) to the City Hospital.

B: he (have) an operation?

A: No, he says it (say) that he (have to / stay) in hospital about two weeks.

B: his parents (inform) about the accident yet?

A: They (already / phone) from the hospital.

B: (be) his friends in hospital now?

# TENSE REVISION

**Complete the sentences meaningfully.**

Example: I usually feed the neighbour's cat while she's away.

1. A pencil-sharpener is used \_\_\_\_.

---

2. A mechanic is someone who \_\_\_\_.

---

3. A person who \_\_\_ is called "TROUBLE MAKER".

---

4. A screwdriver is a tool which is used for turning screws. We use \_\_\_\_

---

5. A train is \_\_\_ than a \_\_\_\_.

---

6. Do you think \_\_\_\_ tomorrow?

---

7. Don't forget to put on your raincoat when \_\_\_\_.

---

8. English is difficult but Chinese \_\_\_\_.

---

9. Having to do a lot of homework makes \_\_\_\_.

---

10. He \_\_\_ invented electricity.

---

11. He fell off the tree while \_\_\_\_.

---

12. He left the hotel without \_\_\_\_.

---

13. He started smoking when he was at university. He has been...

---

14. How about \_\_\_\_?

---

15. I am bored with my school. My school \_\_\_\_.

---

16. I couldn't do my homework because of \_\_\_\_.

---

17. I have never seen \_\_\_ than \_\_\_\_.

---

18. I have no idea what time \_\_\_\_.

19. I have no idea what time \_\_\_\_.

20. I last went to the seaside two months ago. I haven't...

21. I sometimes make my brother \_\_\_\_.

22. I think learning a language is \_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_.

23. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ less yesterday.

24. I'm afraid of \_\_\_\_.

25. In the past, my biggest \_\_\_\_.

26. Is that the woman whose \_\_\_\_?

27. It took \_\_\_\_.

28. It was such a cold day that we had to stay at home. (because)

29. My mother sometimes \_\_\_\_ when she \_\_\_\_.

30. My sister \_\_\_\_ fond of \_\_\_\_ to music, but she \_\_\_\_ anymore.

31. Neither my father nor \_\_\_\_.

32. Nobody likes him because \_\_\_\_.

33. She feeds her baby when \_\_\_\_.

34. She is interested in knitting. Knitting \_\_\_\_.

35. The girl \_\_\_\_ is my friend.

36. The knife which \_\_\_\_.

37. The Mississippi is \_\_\_\_ in the World.

38. The teacher got angry with you. I think he wants you \_\_\_\_.

39. The teacher wanted us to \_\_\_\_.

40. There was \_\_\_\_ the wallet which \_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
41. They make carpets by hand. Carpets \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_

42. They need a tool which \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_

43. This is the \_\_\_\_ I've ever had.  
\_\_\_\_\_

44. We must \_\_\_\_ when we \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_

45. We use a hairdryer to dry hair. A hairdryer is \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_

46. We \_\_\_\_ on the mothers' day.  
\_\_\_\_\_

47. You can't sit down unless \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_

48. have been \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_

49. \_\_\_\_ since I started this school.  
\_\_\_\_\_

50. I last \_\_\_\_ when I was ten years old.  
\_\_\_\_\_

51. I \_\_\_\_ while I was studying.  
\_\_\_\_\_

52. It is ages since \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_

53. I haven't eaten \_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_

54. \_\_\_\_ gone to the dentist's.  
\_\_\_\_\_

55. \_\_\_\_? Yes, once.  
\_\_\_\_\_

56. She has \_\_\_\_ since \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_

57. I \_\_\_\_ the vase while \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_

58. She \_\_\_\_ a party yet.  
\_\_\_\_\_

59. \_\_\_\_ just \_\_\_\_ the classroom.  
\_\_\_\_\_

60. This is \_\_\_\_ ever read.  
\_\_\_\_\_

61. I haven't \_\_\_\_ than this before.

62. He was the man \_\_\_\_.

63. I was there while the flowers \_\_\_\_.

64. I'm fond of \_\_\_\_.

65. We need a secretary who \_\_\_\_.

66. A person who \_\_\_\_ a waiter.

67. \_\_\_\_ isn't easy for me.

68. \_\_\_\_ who invented the printing press.

69. Did the barber who \_\_\_\_?

70. What time they are going to come \_\_\_\_

71. It is too \_\_\_\_ for me to \_\_\_\_ English.

72. You won't get a good mark if \_\_\_\_

# TENSE REVISION

Rewrite the following sentences using the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

Examples: The children (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ now.

The children are sleeping now.

I (sell) \_\_ my car last week.

I sold my car last week.

1. My brother rarely (drink) \_\_ coffee.

---

2. I (not hear) \_\_ from him for two years.

---

3. I (live) \_\_ in Rome since I was born.

---

4. The play (start) ..in five minutes.

---

5. Just as I (leave) \_\_ home, the telephone (ring) \_\_.

---

6. Whenever it (rain) \_\_, the secretary (come) \_\_ late.

---

7. Don't worry. As soon as they (come) \_\_, I (phone) \_\_ you.

---

8. As soon as the thief (see) \_\_ the landlord, he (start) \_\_ to run away.

---

9. Hurry up! The train (leave) \_\_ soon.

---

10. How long you (wait) \_\_ for the bus? -Since 9.30.

---

11. When they (catch) \_\_ the murderers? -Last night.

---

12. I (understand) \_\_ it now.

---

13. The earth (go) \_\_ round the sun.

---

14. He said he just (finish) \_\_ work when we (arrive) \_\_.

---

15. They asked me why I (want) \_\_ to be a teacher.

---

16. Last night after (do) \_\_ my homework, I (go) straight to bed.

---

17. I last (go) \_\_ to the movies two years ago.

---

18. You (see) \_\_ my pen? It (be) on the desk a minute ago.

19. Listen! I (think) \_\_somebody (ring) \_\_the doorbell.

---

20. I (hope) \_\_I (see) \_\_you again.

---

21. They (repair) \_\_my car at the moment.

---

22. He (be) \_\_very ill recently.

---

23. \_\_\_\_\_ you (sleep) \_\_when the telephone (ring) \_\_?

---

24. She never (drink) \_\_coffee in the morning.

---

# PREPOSITIONS

## PREPOSITIONS - PLACE

|   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) Olga is <b>at</b> home.<br>Ivan is <b>at</b> work.<br>Yoko is <b>at</b> school.<br><br>(b) Sue is <b>in</b> bed.<br>Tom is <b>in</b> class.<br>Paul is <b>in</b> jail/prison.<br>Mr. Lee is <b>in</b> (the) hospital. | In (a): <b>at</b> is used with <i>home, work, and school</i> .<br><br>In (b): <b>in</b> is used with <i>bed, class, jail/prison, and hospital</i> .<br>NOTE: American English = <i>in the hospital</i> .<br>British English = <i>in hospital</i> .                    |
| (c) Ahmed is <b>in</b> the kitchen.<br><br>(d) David is <b>in</b> Mexico City.  | In (c): <b>in</b> is used with rooms: <i>in the kitchen, in the classroom, in the hall, in my bedroom, etc.</i><br><br>In (d): <b>in</b> is used with cities, states/provinces, countries, and continents: <i>in Mexico City, in Florida, in Italy, in Asia, etc.</i> |
| (e) A: Where's Ivan?<br>B: He isn't here. He's <b>at</b> the bank.  | In (e): <b>at</b> is usually used with locations in a city: <i>at the post office, at the bank, at the library, at the bookstore, at the park, at the theater, at the restaurant, at the football stadium, etc.</i>   |
| COMPARE<br>(f) In Picture 2, Ivan is <b>in</b> the bank.<br>He is not outside the bank.   | In (f): A speaker uses <b>in</b> with a building only when it is important to say that someone is inside, not outside, the building. Usually a speaker uses <b>at</b> with a building.<br><i>in the bank</i> = inside the bank building.                              |

## PREPOSITIONS - TIME

|                    |   |  |
|--------------------|---|--|
| <b>at</b>          | (a) We have class <b>at</b> one o'clock.<br>(b) I have an appointment with the doctor <b>at</b> 3:00.<br>(c) We sleep <b>at</b> night.  | <b>at</b> + a specific time on the clock<br><br><b>at</b> + night  |
| <b>in</b>          | (d) My birthday is <b>in</b> October.<br>(e) I was born <b>in</b> 1960.<br>(f) We have class <b>in</b> the morning.<br>(g) Bob has class <b>in</b> the afternoon.<br>(h) I study <b>in</b> the evening. | <b>in</b> + specific month<br><b>in</b> + specific year<br><b>in</b> + the morning<br><b>in</b> + the afternoon<br><b>in</b> + the evening |
| <b>on</b>          | (i) I have class <b>on</b> Monday.<br>(j) I was born <b>on</b> October 31, 1975.  | <b>on</b> + a specific day of the week<br><b>on</b> + a specific date  |
| <b>from ... to</b> | (k) We have class <b>from</b> 1:00 <b>to</b> 2:00.  | <b>from</b> (a specific time) <b>to</b> (a specific time)  |

## PREPOSITIONS - LOCATION

|   |   |                  |                        |               |               |           |             |           |                   |                |               |                       |           |              |                    |                  |               |                        |                |                |                         |              |
|---|---|------------------|------------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|-------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------------|-----------|--------------|--------------------|------------------|---------------|------------------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| <p>(a) My book is <b>on</b> my desk.</p>  | <p>In (a): <b>on</b> = a preposition<br/> <b>my desk</b> = object of the preposition<br/> <b>on my desk</b> = a prepositional phrase</p>  |                  |                        |               |               |           |             |           |                   |                |               |                       |           |              |                    |                  |               |                        |                |                |                         |              |
| <p>(b) Tom lives <b>in</b> the United States.<br/> He lives <b>in</b> New York City.<br/> (c) He lives <b>on</b> Hill Street.<br/> (d) He lives <b>at</b> 4472 Hill Street.</p>   | <p>A person lives: <b>in</b> a country and <b>in</b> a city<br/> <b>on</b> a street, avenue, road, etc.<br/> <b>at</b> an address<br/> (See Chart 7-17 for more information about using <b>in</b> and <b>at</b>.)</p> |                  |                        |               |               |           |             |           |                   |                |               |                       |           |              |                    |                  |               |                        |                |                |                         |              |
| <p><b>SOME PREPOSITIONS OF LOCATION*</b></p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 33%;"><i>above</i></td> <td style="width: 33%;"><i>far (away) from</i></td> <td style="width: 33%;"><i>inside</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>around</i></td> <td><i>in</i></td> <td><i>near</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>at</i></td> <td><i>in back of</i></td> <td><i>next to</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>behind</i></td> <td><i>in the back of</i></td> <td><i>on</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>below</i></td> <td><i>in front of</i></td> <td><i>on top of</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>beside</i></td> <td><i>in the front of</i></td> <td><i>outside</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>between</i></td> <td><i>in the middle of</i></td> <td><i>under</i></td> </tr> </table> |   | <i>above</i>     | <i>far (away) from</i> | <i>inside</i> | <i>around</i> | <i>in</i> | <i>near</i> | <i>at</i> | <i>in back of</i> | <i>next to</i> | <i>behind</i> | <i>in the back of</i> | <i>on</i> | <i>below</i> | <i>in front of</i> | <i>on top of</i> | <i>beside</i> | <i>in the front of</i> | <i>outside</i> | <i>between</i> | <i>in the middle of</i> | <i>under</i> |
| <i>above</i>  | <i>far (away) from</i>  | <i>inside</i>    |                        |               |               |           |             |           |                   |                |               |                       |           |              |                    |                  |               |                        |                |                |                         |              |
| <i>around</i>   | <i>in</i>   | <i>near</i>      |                        |               |               |           |             |           |                   |                |               |                       |           |              |                    |                  |               |                        |                |                |                         |              |
| <i>at</i>   | <i>in back of</i>   | <i>next to</i>   |                        |               |               |           |             |           |                   |                |               |                       |           |              |                    |                  |               |                        |                |                |                         |              |
| <i>behind</i>   | <i>in the back of</i>   | <i>on</i>        |                        |               |               |           |             |           |                   |                |               |                       |           |              |                    |                  |               |                        |                |                |                         |              |
| <i>below</i>  | <i>in front of</i>  | <i>on top of</i> |                        |               |               |           |             |           |                   |                |               |                       |           |              |                    |                  |               |                        |                |                |                         |              |
| <i>beside</i>   | <i>in the front of</i>  | <i>outside</i>   |                        |               |               |           |             |           |                   |                |               |                       |           |              |                    |                  |               |                        |                |                |                         |              |
| <i>between</i>  | <i>in the middle of</i>   | <i>under</i>     |                        |               |               |           |             |           |                   |                |               |                       |           |              |                    |                  |               |                        |                |                |                         |              |

Fill in the

blanks with correct prepositions, if necessary. Write the sentences completely

**Example:** Jane goes to work .... bus.

Jane goes to work ...**on**.. bus.

1. My birthday is .... March.

---

2. We are going to me .... 4:00 p.m.

---

3. Students must go to school .... weekdays.

---

4. Do you do play tennis ....the weekend?

---

5. His birthday is ..... November 5th .

---

6. We have art lesson .... Mondays.

---

7. Columbos discovered America .... 1492.

---

8. You can see the stars .... night, if the sky is clear.

---

9. Tom isn't here .... the moment. He'll be back .... five minutes.

---

10. The course begins .... 7 January and ends .... 10 March.

---

11. Tom's grandmother died .... 1977 .... the age of 79.

---

12. The price of electricity is going up .... October.

---

13. Ann works hard during the week, so she likes to relax .... weekends.

---

14. I can't be at home .... the morning. Can you phone me .... the afternoon instead?

---

15. Jack's brother is an engineer but he's out of work .... the moment.

---

16. .... Sunday afternoons I usually go for a walk in the country.

---

17. Tom doesn't see his parents very often these days- usually only ..... Christmas and sometimes..... the summer for few days.

---

18. The telephone and the doorbell rang ..... the same time.

---

19. I walk up a lot of stairs everyday. My flat is ..... the third floor and there is no lift.

---

20. We went to the theatre last night. We had seats ..... the front row.

---

21. It can be dangerous when children play football ..... the street.

---

22. I can't find Tom..... in this photogafaph

---

23. Do you take sugar ..... your coffee?

---

24. You can find the sports results ..... back page of the newspaper.

---

25. Sue and Dave got married .... Manchester four years ago.

---

26. Paris is ..... the river Seine.

---

27. Mr. Boyle's office is ..... the first floor. When you come out of the lift, it's the third floor ..... your left.

---

28. Turn left ..... the traffic lights.

---

29. In most countries people drive ..... the right.

---

30. Last year we had a lovely skiing holiday .... the Swiss Alps.

---

31. She spends all day sitting ..... the window and watching what is happening outside.

Cenk lives ..... 810 İstiklal Street.

---

32. The course begins ..... 8 June and ends ..... October.

---

33. Peter is ..... class 2 B.

---

34. Peter goes to school ..... Monday ..... Friday.

---

35. Students haven't got any lessons ..... the weekends.

---

36. Sheila gets up ..... 6.30 every morning.

---

37. Mike and his family go for a walk ..... the evenings.

---

38. Michael has got a lot of posters and pictures ..... cars ..... the wall ..... his room.

---

39. I go to school ..... bus, not ..... foot.

---

40. I went to bed ..... midnight and got up..... 10.00 ..... the morning.

---

41. Mozart was born ..... Salzburg ..... 1756.

---

42. There is a car in ..... .... our house.

---

43. Who is sitting ..... to you?

---

44. There is a light .... the table.

---

45. Hurry up! We are going to the cinema .... five minutes.

---

46. I haven't seen Ann for a few days. I last saw her ..... Tuesday.

---

47. Jack's brother is an engineer but he's out of work ..... the moment.

---

48. Why didn't you apologize..... your friend..... \_ hitting him?

---

49. Please, take these books ..... the library; I am busy..... my homework.

---

50. She is interested ..... show programmes ..... TV.

---

51. What would you do if you heard ..... someone shouting ..... help?

---

52. I had some arguments ..... my friend ..... sharing an apple this morning.

---

53. I looked at the bookcase and saw an interesting story book ..... the top shelf.

---

54. ..... sunny days we usually go on a picnic.

---

55. I usually listen ..... pop music, because I'm interested ..... it.

---

56. Mary was born ..... 20th March ..... 1982.

---

57. We had to work everyday ..... last summer.

---

58. ..... Christmas I'd like to visit my relatives.

---

59. I last saw him ..... last March.

---

60. Section 5 is ..... the first floor of the Prep School.

---

61. You mustn't smoke .... a bus.

---

62. Ahmet's grandmother died ..... 1990 ..... the age of 81.

---

63. Were there many people ..... the concert?

---

64. He speaks quite good French. He studied ..... Paris for a year.

---

65. Jimmy was getting ready for school. He was looking for his clothes. His mother said,

---

66. "Your shirt is ..... the chair. Your socks are ..... the drawer. Your shoes are .... the bed."

---

67. Get ..... the bus! It's about to go.

---

68. The car ..... mine braked very hard and hit my car.

---

69. You walk very fast. You're always five steps ..... me.

---

70. There are emergency telephones all ..... the E-5 Motorway.

---

71. I will be very angry with you if I see your bicycle leaning ..... the rose tree again.

---

72. There's a big dog ..... you. Quick! Run away!

---

73. Someone parked his car ..... ..... of my gate. I can't go out.

---

74. There is a concert. A lot of people are .... the stadium.

---

75. Mary is sitting .... John and Sebastian.

---

76. The dog is swimming ..... the river.

---

77. Ali is next to Barış or Ali is ..... Barış.

---

# PRONOUNS

|  | SUBJECT PRONOUNS | OBJECT PRONOUNS  | POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS | POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES |
|--|------------------|--|---------------------|-----------------------|
| SINGULAR   | <i>I</i>         | <i>me</i>  | <i>mine</i>         | <i>my name(s)</i>     |
|  | <i>you</i>       | <i>you</i>   | <i>yours</i>        | <i>your name(s)</i>   |
|  | <i>she</i>       | <i>her</i>   | <i>hers</i>         | <i>her name(s)</i>    |
|  | <i>he</i>        | <i>him</i>   | <i>his</i>          | <i>his name(s)</i>    |
|  | <i>it</i>        | <i>it</i>  |                     | <i>its name(s)</i>    |
| PLURAL   | <i>we</i>        | <i>us</i>  | <i>ours</i>         | <i>our name(s)</i>    |
|  | <i>you</i>       | <i>you</i>   | <i>yours</i>        | <i>your name(s)</i>   |
|  | <i>they</i>      | <i>them</i>  | <i>theirs</i>       | <i>their name(s)</i>  |
| (a) <b>We</b> saw an accident.<br>(b) Anna saw <b>it</b> too.<br>(c) I have my pen. Sue has <b>hers</b> .<br>(d) <b>Her</b> pen is blue. |                  | Personal pronouns are used as:<br>• subjects, as in (a);<br>• objects, as in (b);<br>• OR to show possession, as in (c) and (d).   |                     |                       |
| (e) I have a <u>book</u> . <b>It</b> is on my desk.<br>(f) I have some <u>books</u> . <b>They</b> are on my desk.                        |                  | Use a singular pronoun to refer to a singular noun. In (e): <i>book</i> and <i>it</i> are both singular.<br>Use a plural pronoun to refer to a plural noun.<br>In (f): <i>books</i> and <i>they</i> are both plural. |                     |                       |

## POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES - MY, YOUR, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR -

| SINGULAR  | PLURAL   | SUBJECT FORM  | POSSESSIVE FORM   |
|---|--|---|---|
| (a) <b>I</b> have a book.<br><b>My</b> book is red.     | (e) <b>We</b> have books.<br><b>Our</b> books are red.     | <i>I</i> →<br><i>you</i> →<br><i>she</i> →<br><i>he</i> →<br><i>we</i> →<br><i>they</i> → | <i>my</i><br><i>your</i><br><i>her</i><br><i>his</i><br><i>our</i><br><i>their</i>                        |
| (b) <b>You</b> have a book.<br><b>Your</b> book is red. | (f) <b>You</b> have books.<br><b>Your</b> books are red.   |   |   |
| (c) <b>She</b> has a book.<br><b>Her</b> book is red.   | (g) <b>They</b> have books.<br><b>Their</b> books are red. |   |   |
| (d) <b>He</b> has a book.<br><b>His</b> book is red.    |  |   | I possess a book. = I have a book. = It is <i>my</i> book.  |
|   |  |   | <i>My, our, her, his, our, and their</i> are called “possessive adjectives.” They come in front of nouns. |

# POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

## MY, YOUR, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR

Fill in the blanks with MY, YOUR, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR

Examples: I am looking at \_\_ watch. I am looking at my watch.  
The man is looking for \_\_ hat. The man is looking for his hat.

1. I am doing \_\_ homework.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. My father is reading \_\_ newspaper.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. My sister likes \_\_ school very much.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. You always write to \_\_ parents.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The cat is drinking \_\_ milk.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. We like \_\_ teacher very much.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. My brothers sometimes go out with \_\_ friends.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The waitress is washing \_\_ hands.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. The firemen are putting on \_\_ uniforms.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Mr. Taylor never washes \_\_ car.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Susan and Mary ride \_\_ bicycles in the park.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. My sister and I do \_\_ homework together.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. The dog is wagging \_\_ tail.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Mr. Brown takes \_\_ son to school every morning.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Mrs. Brown takes \_\_ daughter to school every day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. You and your brother always phone \_\_ parents.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. These women are talking about \_\_ husbands.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. My nephew is talking to \_\_ teacher now.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. This man wants \_\_ money.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. The thieves don't want to tell \_\_ names.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. My niece is helping \_\_ father.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. We are waiting for \_\_ teacher.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. The boy is calling \_\_ mother.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. The children are looking for \_\_ ball.  
\_\_\_\_\_

25. Ann has a car. \_\_ car is new.

---

26. A: "What's \_\_ name ?" B: "Thomas"

---

27. Are you and your sister ready? \_\_ friend is waiting for you in the car.

---

28. A: What's \_\_\_. job? B: I'm a mechanic.

---

29. Madonna is a famous singer. \_\_ new records are great.

---

30. Robert has got a dog. \_\_ name is Bingo.

---

31. We have got a new house in Izmir. \_\_ new house is very large.

---

32. The boys are riding \_\_ bicycles in the garden.

---

33. Mary is going to school. \_\_ school is very far.

---

34. Sue and Mary are wearing ear-rings. \_\_ ear-rings are silver.

---

# OBJECT PRONOUNS (me, him, her, you, it, them, us)

| SUBJECT PRONOUNS   | OBJECT PRONOUNS                | SUBJECT - OBJECT   |
|--|--------------------------------|--|
| (a) <b>I</b> speak English.                              | (b) Bob knows <b>me</b> .      | <b>I</b> - <b>me</b>   |
| (c) <b>You</b> speak English.                            | (d) Bob knows <b>you</b> .     | <b>you</b> - <b>you</b>  |
| (e) <b>She</b> speaks English.                           | (f) Bob knows <b>her</b> .     | <b>she</b> - <b>her</b>  |
| (g) <b>He</b> speaks English.                            | (h) Bob knows <b>him</b> .     | <b>he</b> - <b>him</b>   |
| (i) <b>It</b> starts at 8:00.                            | (j) Bob knows <b>it</b> .      | <b>it</b> - <b>it</b>  |
| (k) <b>We</b> speak English.                             | (l) Bob talks to <b>us</b> .   | <b>we</b> - <b>us</b>  |
| (m) <b>You</b> speak English.                            | (n) Bob talks to <b>you</b> .  | <b>you</b> - <b>you</b>  |
| (o) <b>They</b> speak English.                           | (p) Bob talks to <b>them</b> . | <b>they</b> - <b>them</b>  |
| (q) I know <u>Tony</u> . <u>He</u> is a friendly person. |                                | A pronoun has the same meaning as a noun. In (q): <b>he</b> has the same meaning as <b>Tony</b> . In (r): <b>him</b> has the same meaning as <b>Tony</b> . In grammar, we say that a pronoun "refers to" a noun. The pronouns <b>he</b> and <b>him</b> refer to the noun <b>Tony</b> . |
| (r) I like <u>Tony</u> . I know <u>him</u> well.         |                                |  |
| (s) I have <u>a red book</u> . <u>It</u> is on my desk.  |                                | Sometimes a pronoun refers to a "noun phrase." In (s): <b>it</b> refers to the whole phrase <b>a red book</b> .  |

Rewrite the following sentences using object pronouns for the underlined words.

Example: Can you see that boy? Can you see him?  
Open those boxes. Open them.

1. I know those policemen.
2. That boy likes his father a lot.
3. I sometimes see your parents.
4. She never phones her mother from the office.
5. The boss is talking to the headwaiter.
6. The police are looking for you and me.
7. I want to see you and your brother immediately.
8. This car belongs to Mr. Miller.
9. I don't like that book.
10. Give those pictures to me.
11. Do you know that man?
12. That man is looking for your father.
13. That house belongs to our family.
14. Do you miss your grandmother?

15. She always plays with her friends.

16. Give me the chair behind Jim.

17. He sometimes listens to records.

18. He sends the letters in the afternoon.

19. I want to talk to Mrs. Bailey.

20. They don't like the new building.

21. Tell the children to come in.

22. I will call my aunt.

23. The secretary is typing the report.

24. Send the books to your uncle.

## OBJECT PRONOUNS (me, him, her, it, them, us)

Rewrite the underlined parts using ME, HIM, HER, THEM, US, IT:

1. There are some books on the desk. Look at these books.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. She is turning the radio on.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. The teacher is asking Jane a question.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Take your shoes off.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. The man is looking at Ali and me.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Jim is giving his father some tea.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. This is the dog's meat. Give the meat to the dog.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Is Tom eating any oranges?

\_\_\_\_\_

9. Give the milk to that cat.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. Could you pass the salt to your mother?

# POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

(a) This book belongs to me.  
It is **my** book.  
It is **mine**.  
(b) That book belongs to you.  
It is **your** book.  
It is **yours**.

| POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE | POSSESSIVE PRONOUN |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| <b>my</b>            | <b>mine</b>        |
| <b>your</b>          | <b>yours</b>       |
| <b>her</b>           | <b>hers</b>        |
| <b>his</b>           | <b>his</b>         |
| <b>our</b>           | <b>ours</b>        |
| <b>their</b>         | <b>theirs</b>      |

A possessive adjective is used in front of a noun: **my book**.

A possessive pronoun is used alone, without a noun following it:  
**That book is mine.**

INCORRECT: **That is mine book.**

Rewrite the following sentences using possessive pronouns.

**Example:** This is my car. This car is mine. It is mine.

These are our shoes. These shoes are ours. They are ours.

1. This is my book.

2. They are our bicycles.

3. That is her bracelet.

4. This is his ball.

5. Those are your postcards.

6. This is my jacket.

7. This is Mr. White's suitcase.

8. That is his carpet

9. This is her cat.

10. That is our house.

11. Those are their coats.

12. Those are my books.

13. That is your tie.

14. That is Mary's dictionary.

15. Those are Mehmet's pens.

16. This is your room.

17. These are their tables.

18. That is the teacher's chair.

19. This is their factory.

20. Those are Ali's stamps.

21. That is your uncle's car.

22. This is their flat.

23. These are our tools.

24. These are the policeman's revolvers.

## PRONOUNS and POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

*Rewrite the following sentences using pronouns or possessive adjectives for the underlined words.*

**Examples:**      The hostess is serving the passengers.      *She is serving them.*  
                            Ahmet is reading the newspaper.      *He is reading it.*

1. Mr. Jones is phoning Mrs. Jones.

2. Barbara visits Mr. and Mrs. Miller every week.

3. The policemen are looking for me and my brother.

4. Tom is carrying his father's suitcase.

5. There is a man in front of Ali.

6. My brother and I are singing. Listen to my brother and me.

7. This isn't my jacket. It is my brother's jacket.

8. That is my mother's handbag.

9. I can see you and your brother.

10. That isn't my coat. It is your coat.

11. The waitress is bringing the chicken to us.

12. My brother and I like our school very much.

13. Is that your brother's umbrella. No, It is my mother's.

14. Ali and Veli want to see your father.

15. The dog is following you and me.

16. Zeynep is bringing us some tea.

17. The children are playing. Watch the children.

18. Who is the man next to Hasan?

19. My parents live in Aksaray.

20. Give the book on the table to me.

21. The policewoman is looking for you and your brother.

22. Bill's mother is waiting for Bill.

23. The cat is running after the mice.

24. This isn't our house. It is their house.

Complete the sentences using a REFLEXIVE PRONOUN:

Example: I didn't buy that cake from the shop. I made it myself.

1. A: Who built your swimming pool for you?

B: Nobody. We built it   .

---

2. Did someone phone the doctor for you? Or did you phone him   ?

3. A: Who told you they were moving?

B: They told me   .

---

4. Mr. Mason    offered me the job.

5. Sally didn't buy that sweater, she made it   .

---

6. He looked at    in the mirror.

---

7. I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with   .

---

8. Margaret had a nice time in London. She enjoyed   .

---

9. My friends had a nice time in London. They enjoyed   .

---

10. I picked up a very hot plate and burnt   .

---

11. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about   .

---

12. I want to know more about you. Tell me about   .

---

13. I didn't buy that cake from the shop. I made it   .

---

14. A: Who built your swimming pool for you?

B: Nobody. We built it   .

---

15. Did someone phone the doctor for you? Or did you phone him \_\_\_\_?

---

16. A: Who told you they were moving?

B: They told me \_\_\_\_.

---

17. Mr. Mason \_\_\_\_ offered me the job.

---

18. Sally didn't buy that sweater, she made it \_\_\_\_.

---

19. He looked at \_\_ in the mirror.

---

20. I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with \_\_\_\_.

---

21. Margaret had a nice time in London. She enjoyed \_\_\_\_.

---

22. My friends had a nice time in London. They enjoyed \_\_\_\_.

---

23. I picked up a very hot plate and burnt \_\_\_\_.

---

24. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about \_\_\_\_.

---

25. I want to know more about you. Tell me about \_\_\_\_.

---

26. Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look after \_\_\_\_!

---

# MODALS

## SUMMARY CHART OF MODALS AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS

| AUXILIARY   | USES                                       | PRESENT/FUTURE   | PAST  |
|-------------|--|--|---|
| BE GOING TO | (1) 100% certainty                         | He <b>is going to be</b> here at 6:00. ( <i>future only</i> )                                  |   |
|             | (2) definite plan                          | I'm <b>going to paint</b> my bedroom, ( <i>future only</i> )                                   | I <b>was going to paint</b> my room, but I didn't have time.            |
| CAN         | (1) ability/possibility                    | I <b>can run</b> fast.   | I <b>could run</b> fast when I was a child, but now I can't.            |
|             | (2) informal permission                    | You <b>can use</b> my car tomorrow.  |   |
|             | (3) informal polite request                | <b>Can I borrow</b> your pen?  |   |
|             | (4) impossibility ( <i>negative only</i> ) | That <b>can't be</b> true!   | That <b>can't have been</b> true!                                       |
| COULD       | (1) past ability                           |  | I <b>could run</b> fast when I was a child.                             |
|             | (2) polite request                         | <b>Could I borrow</b> your pen?<br><b>Could you help</b> me?                                   |   |
|             | (3') suggestion                            | —I need help in math.<br>You <b>could talk</b> to your teacher.                                | You <b>could have talked</b> to your teacher.                           |
|             | (4) less than 50% certainty                | “Where's John?”<br>He <b>could be</b> at home.   | He <b>could have been</b> at home.                                      |
|             | (5) impossibility ( <i>negative only</i> ) | That <b>couldn't be</b> true!  | That <b>couldn't have been</b> true!                                    |
| BE ABLE TO  | (6) ability                                | I <b>am able to help</b> you.<br>I <b>will be able to help</b> you.                            | I <b>was able to help</b> him.  |
| MAY         | (1) polite request                         | <b>May I borrow</b> your pen?  |   |
|             | (2) formal permission                      | You <b>may leave</b> the room.   |   |
|             | (3) less than 50% certainty                | -- Where's John?<br>He <b>may be</b> at the library.   | He <b>may have been</b> at the library.                                 |
| MIGHT       | (1) less than 50% certainty                | -- Where's John?<br>He <b>might be</b> at the library.   | He <b>might have been</b> at the library.                               |
|             | (2) polite request ( <i>rare</i> )         | <b>Might I borrow</b> your pen?  |   |
| SHOULD      | (1) advisability                           | I <b>should study</b> tonight.   | I <b>should have studied</b> last night                                 |
|             | (2) 90% certainty                          | She <b>should do</b> well on the test. ( <i>future only, not present</i> )                     | She <b>should have done</b> well on the test.                           |
| OUGHT TO    | (1) advisability                           | I <b>ought to study</b> tonight.   | I <b>ought to have studied</b> last night.                              |
|             | (2) 90% certainty                          | She <b>ought to do</b> well on the test. ( <i>future only, not present</i> )                   | She <b>ought to have done</b> well on the test.                         |
| HAD BETTER  | (1) advisability with threat of bad result | You <b>had better be</b> on time, or we will leave without you.                                | ( <i>past form uncommon</i> )   |
| SUPPOSED TO | (1) expectation                            | Class <b>is supposed to begin</b> at 10.   | Class <b>was supposed to begin</b> at 10.                               |
| BE TO       | (1) strong expectation                     | You <b>are to be</b> here at 9:00.   | You <b>were to be</b> here at 9:00.                                     |
| MUST        | (1) strong necessity                       | I <b>must go</b> to class today.   | I <b>had to go</b> to class yesterday.                                  |
|             | (2) prohibition ( <i>negative</i> )        | You <b>must not open</b> that door.  |   |
|             | (3) 95% certainty                          | Mary isn't in class. She <b>must be</b> sick. ( <i>present only</i> )                          | Mary <b>must have been</b> sick yesterday.                              |
| HAVE TO     | (1) necessity                              | I <b>have to go</b> to class today.  | I <b>had to go</b> to class yesterday.                                  |
|             | (2) lack of necessity ( <i>negative</i> )  | I <b>don't have to go</b> to class today.  | I <b>didn't have to go</b> to class yesterday.                          |
| HAVE GOT TO | (1) necessity                              | I <b>have got to go</b> to class today.  | I <b>had to go</b> to class yesterday.                                  |
| WILL        | (1) 100% certainty                         | He <b>will be</b> here at 6:00. ( <i>future only</i> )   |   |
|             | (2) willingness                            | —The phone's ringing.<br>I'll <b>get</b> it.   |   |
|             | (3) polite request                         | <b>Will</b> you please <b>pass</b> the salt?   |   |
| WOULD       | (1) polite request                         | <b>Would</b> you please <b>pass</b> the salt?<br><b>Would</b> you <b>mind</b> if I left early? |   |
|             | (2) preference                             | I <b>would rather go</b> to the park than <b>stay</b> home                                     | I <b>would rather have gone</b> to the park                             |
|             | (3) repeated action in the past            |  | When I was a child, I <b>would visit</b> my grandparents every weekend. |
| USED TO     | (1) repeated action in the past            |  | I <b>used to visit</b> my grandparents every weekend.                   |
| SHALL       | (1) polite question to make a suggestion   | <b>Shall</b> I <b>open</b> the window?   |   |
|             | (2) future with "I" or "we" as subject     | I <b>shall arrive</b> at nine ( <i>will = more common</i> )                                    |   |

# MAY, COULD, CAN, (PERMISSION, REQUEST)

|   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) <b>May I borrow</b> your pen?<br>(b) <b>Could I borrow</b> your pen?<br>(c) <b>Can I borrow</b> your pen?   | (a), (b), and (c) have the same meaning: I want to borrow your pen. I am asking politely to borrow your pen.                                      |
| (d) <b>May I please borrow</b> your pen?<br>(e) <b>Could I please borrow</b> your pen?<br>(f) <b>Can I please borrow</b> your pen?                                      | <b>Please</b> is often used in polite questions.  |
| TYPICAL RESPONSES<br>(g) <b>Yes, of course.</b><br>(h) <b>Of course.</b><br>(i) <b>Certainly.</b><br>(j) <b>Sure.</b> (informal)*<br>(k) <b>No problem.</b> (informal)* | TYPICAL CONVERSATION<br>A: <i>May I please borrow your pen?</i><br>B: <b>Yes, of course.</b> <i>Here it is.</i><br>A: <i>Thank you. / Thanks.</i> |

Make requests.

1. You are thirsty. (May I...?)
2. You want to sleep but your brother is talking loudly. (Could you...?)
3. You are very hungry. (Could I...?)
4. You want to learn something personal about your friend. (Could I...?)
5. You don't like smoking and someone is smoking in the room. (Would you...?)
6. You need a telephone. (May I...?)
7. Your pencil isn't well enough to write. (Will you...?)
8. You want someone to tell you the date. (Could you...?)
9. You want your brother to close the window. (Can you...?)
10. You want someone to give you a glass of water. (Could you...?)
11. You want your friend to show you some interesting photos. (Can you...?)
12. You want Jane to give you a glass of water. (Could you...?)
13. You want your teacher to repeat the sentence. (Could you...?)
14. You want your brother to give you the salt. (Will you....please?)
15. You want your mother cook "manti". (Can you...?)
16. You want one of your friends to help you solve a problem. (Could you...?)
17. You want your uncle to teach you how to drive. (Will you..., please?)
18. You want the student on duty to clean the board. (Could you...?)
19. You want your friend to give you some advice. (Could you...?)
20. You want your neighbor's son to post a letter. (Could you...?)

# REQUESTS (Will – Would - Could)

Make requests beginning with **will**, **would**, and **could**.

**Example:** open the door    Will you open the door (please)?  
                                  Would you open the door (please)?  
                                  Could you open the door (please)?

1. turn on the TV

2. give me a pen

3. call the police

4. turn the lights off

5. wake me up at seven

6. take this to your father

7. get me a newspaper

8. have a seat

9. come at 9 o'clock tomorrow

10. answer the telephone

11. pass the salt

12. sign here

13. lend me some money

14. tell me the time

15. send me some flowers

16. pull the curtains

17. leave the door open

18. take off your shoes here

19. call me a taxi

20. leave me alone

21. do me a favor

22. change the cassette

23. stop that noise

24. post this letter for me

*Make offers.*

1. I have a headache. (Would you...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. An old woman has difficulty with carrying a heavy basket. (I'll...)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. You want to buy a cold drink for your friend. (Would you...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. It is raining cats and dogs, and your friend hasn't got an umbrella. (I can...)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. A small boy is trying to unlock a door, but he can't. (Would you...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Your father wants to cut the grass in the garden, but he hasn't got much time. (Shall I...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Your brother can't solve the math problems. (Shall I...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Your teacher is trying to carry his table alone. (Could...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. You are driving a car and you see some students waiting for the bus and you see they are late. (Would you ...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_

## CAN I..., COULD I...? etc.(requests)

|  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) <b>Could you (please) open</b> the door?<br>(b) <b>Would you (please) open</b> the door?   | (a) and (b) have the same meaning: I want you to open the door. I am politely asking you to open the door.                              |
| <b>TYPICAL RESPONSES</b><br>(c) <b>Yes, of course.</b><br>(d) <b>Certainly.</b><br>(e) <b>I'd be glad to.</b><br>(f) <b>I'd be happy to.</b><br>(g) <b>Sure.</b> (informal)<br>(h) <b>No problem.</b> (informal) | <b>TYPICAL CONVERSATION</b><br>A: <i>Could you please open the door?</i><br>B: <i>I'd be glad to.</i><br>A: <i>Thank you. / Thanks.</i> |

## ASKING FOR PERMISSION & MAKING REQUESTS

*Ask for permission.*

1. You want to telephone. (Do you think I...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. You want to use your friend's ruler. (Can I...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. You need your deskmate's pen. (Could I...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. You need someone to look after your son when you are out. (Do you think...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. You need some help in the exam. (Do you think...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. You want to watch a film on the other channel. (Could I...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. You need some money. (Do you think...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. You want to borrow your friend's tape recorder. (Can I...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. You want to look at the newspaper on the teacher's table. (Do you think...?)  
\_\_\_\_\_

# CAN – CAN’T (Ability)

| (QUESTION WORD) + CAN + SUBJECT + MAIN VERB |              |              |              |               | ANSWER    |   |
|---|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|-----------|---|
| (a)   | <b>Can</b>   | <b>you</b>   | <b>speak</b> | Arabic?       | →         | <b>Yes, I can.</b><br>→ <b>No, I can't.</b>     |
| (b)   | <b>Can</b>   | <b>Marge</b> | <b>come</b>  | to the party? | →         | <b>Yes, she can.</b><br>→ <b>No, she can't.</b> |
| (c)   | <b>Where</b> | <b>can</b>   | <b>I</b>     | <b>buy</b>    | a hammer? | → <b>At a hardware store.</b>                   |
| (d)   | <b>When</b>  | <b>can</b>   | <b>you</b>   | <b>help</b>   | me?       | → <b>Tomorrow afternoon.</b>                    |

Make sentences as in the example.

Example: he - play football - basketball

He can play football but he can't play basketball.

she – sing - dance

She can sing but she can't dance.

1. I – do the washing - washing up

2. he - speak German - French

3. I - ride a bicycle – drive

4. they - come tomorrow - tonight

5. Bob – ski - ice skate

6. I - play table tennis – tennis

7. I - drive a car – lorry

8. My little brother – crawl – walk

9. I - buy a bicycle – car

10. my father - make tea – cook

11. she - play the violin - piano

12. I - write a letter – article

13. she – sew – knit

14. we - play volleyball – cricket

15. they - understand Arabic – Persian

16. he - write with his right hand - left hand

17. I - teach mathematics - physics

18. he - throw the javelin – discus

19. he - answer questions 5 - question 8

20. she – sing - recite a poem

21. he - lift a chair – table

22. she - understand Spanish – speak

23. we - build a house – skyscraper

24. the cat - catch the mouse – bird

## CAN – Ability (Yes/No Questions)

Ask questions with **can** and give short answers as in the example.

**Example:** speak English      **Can** you speak English? Yes, I can.  
drive                                    **Can** you drive? Yes, I can. But not very well.  
speak Chinese                        **Can** you speak Chinese? No, I can't.

1. run very fast

2. type

3. swim fast

4. cook

5. make tea

6. play football

7. play the guitar

8. speak German

9. understand French

10. play table tennis

11. write an article

12. build a house

13. ride a horse

14. play the drums

15. fly a plane

**16.** sleep on a chair

---

**17.** climb up a straight wall

---

**18.** lift a refrigerator

---

**19.** jump down from a minaret

---

**20.** eat hot pepper

---

**21.** change a flat tire

---

# COULD – Past Ability

|  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) I am in Hawaii. I can go to the beach every day.   | <b>could</b> = the past form of <b>can</b> .    |
| (b) I was in Hawaii <b>last month</b> . I <b>could go</b> to the beach every day when I was there.   |   |
| (c) I can't go to the movie today. I have to study.<br>(d) I { <b>couldn't go</b> } { <b>could not go</b> } to the movie <b>last night</b> . I had to study. | NEGATIVE:<br><b>could + not = couldn't</b>      |
| (e) <b>Could</b> you <b>speak</b> English before you came here?  | QUESTION:<br><b>could + subject + main verb</b> |

Make

sentences with **could** as in the example.

Example: I – walk – six years old *I could walk when I was six years old.*

He – read a newspaper – seven years old. *He could read a newspaper when he was seven years old.*

1. I – swim – six years old

2. He – read – five years old

3. She – crawl – six months old

4. My father – see very well – before having an operation

5. My mother – cook better – young

6. I – go to school alone – seven years old

7. She – play the piano – five years old

8. I – talk – two years old

9. I – count up to one hundred – before starting school

10. She – read and write – seven years old

11. He – play chess – eight years old

12. I – cook – ten years old

13. She – speak German – nine years old

14. He – drive – eleven years old

15. They – play football – seven years old

16. We – solve math problems – in the second grade

17. I – climb trees – seven years old

18. She – sew – six years old

19. She – knit – seven years old

# COULD or WAS / WERE ABLE TO?

Complete the following sentences using **could** when possible and **was (were) able to** when not possible.

**Example:** He        drive a car when he was eighteen.

He **could** drive a car when he was eighteen.

He        drive his car through the heavy traffic yesterday.

He **was able to** drive his car through the heavy traffic yesterday.

1. He        swim very well when he was a baby.

2. He        swim in spite of the storm.

3. The road was blocked but we        get there on time.

4. I        understand French last year but I can't now.

5.        understand what they were saying though they were far away.

6. The prisoners        escape because it was dark.

7. I        find my pen after looking for it for ten minutes.

8. I        see that he was bored.

9. I        feel that somebody was following us.

10. He        pass his examination though he didn't study hard.

11. I        hardly believe my eyes when I saw them.

12. I        hear everything from where I was standing.

13. After running for ten minutes they        catch the last train.

14. When we were in school, he        read faster than anybody else.

15. The police        find the place they were hiding.

16. During the competition he        beat all his opponents.

17. The secretary        finish the reports before five o'clock.

18. When she worked for us, she        finish everything on time.

19. The driver        brake on time.

20. We        sleep soundly though they were making a lot of noise.

21. She        sew when she was nine.

# COULDN'T

Complete the following sentences by using a clause with **couldn't**.

**Example:**       because the door was locked.

*I couldn't enter the house* because the door was locked.

      because I didn't have enough money.

*I couldn't take a taxi* because I didn't have enough money.

1.       because it was raining.

2.       because the teacher was watching him.

3.       because he was driving too fast.

4.       because it was too expensive.

5.       because the questions were too difficult.

6.       because it was too late.

7.       because her mother was ill.

8.       because there were other people waiting,

9.       because it was foggy.

10.       because I had got up late.

11.       because there was no food left.

12.       because they were wearing masks.

13.       because it was too cold.

14.       because it was too hot.

15.       because their car was faster.

16.       because the train arrived late.

17.       because there was a lot of noise.

18.       because there were a lot of new words.

# HAVE TO / HAS TO / MUST (Necessity)

## EXPRESSING NECESSITY: **MUST, HAVE TO, HAVE GOT TO**

|  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) All applicants <b>must take</b> an entrance exam.  | <b>Must</b> and <b>have to</b> both express necessity.<br>In (a) and (b): It is necessary for every applicant to take an entrance exam. There is no other choice. The exam is required.  |
| (c) I'm looking for Sue. I <b>have to talk</b> to her about our lunch date tomorrow. I can't meet her for lunch because I <b>have to go</b> to a business meeting at 1:00. | In everyday statements of necessity, <b>have to</b> is used more commonly than <b>must</b> . <b>Must</b> is usually stronger than <b>have to</b> and can indicate urgency or stress importance. In (e): The speaker is simply saying, "I need to do this and I need to do that." In (d): The speaker is strongly saying, "This is very important!" |
| (d) Where's Sue? I <b>must talk</b> to her right away. I have an urgent message for her.   |  |
| (e) I <b>have to</b> ("hafta") be home by eight.   | Note: <b>have to</b> is usually pronounced "hafta"; <b>has to</b> is usually pronounced "hasta."   |
| (f) He <b>has to</b> ("hasta") go to a meeting tonight.  |  |
| (g) I <b>have got to go</b> now. I have a class in ten minutes.  | <b>Have got to</b> also expresses the idea of necessity: (g) and (h) have the same meaning. <b>Have got to</b> is informal and is used primarily in spoken English. <b>Have to</b> is used in both formal and informal English.  |
| (h) I <b>have to go</b> now. I have a class in ten minutes.  |  |
| (i) I <b>have got to go</b> ("I've got to go / I gotta go") now.   | Usual pronunciation of <b>got to</b> is "gotta." Sometimes <b>have</b> is dropped in speech: "I gotta do it."  |
| (j) PRESENT or FUTURE<br>I <b>have to / have got to / must study</b> tonight.  | The idea of past necessity is expressed by <b>had to</b> . There is no other past form for <b>must</b> (when it means necessity) or <b>have got to</b> .   |
| (k) PAST: I <b>had to study</b> last night.  |  |

Rewrite the following sentences using **have to** or **has to**.

Examples: He **must** paint the walls. He **has to** paint the walls.  
We **must** get up early. We **have to** get up early.

1. I must find him.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. He must finish it today.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. They must get there before five.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. You must wait for the green light.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. I must work on Saturday.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. You must do your homework.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. You must wash the dishes.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. You must answer all of the questions.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. You must wear your uniform today.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. She must memorize the dialogue.

\_\_\_\_\_

11. You must lock the door.

\_\_\_\_\_

12. You must polish your shoes.

\_\_\_\_\_

13. He must take a taxi.

\_\_\_\_\_

14. She must lend him some money.

\_\_\_\_\_

15. You must stop smoking.

\_\_\_\_\_

16. We must learn English.

\_\_\_\_\_

17. He must find a job.

\_\_\_\_\_

18. We must leave now.

19. He must take the exam.

20. She must help her mother.

21. They must be very careful.

22. She must fill in the form.

23. He must change some money.

24. I must help him.

## HAVE TO / HAS TO / MUST

Change the sentences above to question first with **must** then with **have to**.

Example: He **must** paint the walls. Must he paint the walls?

Does he have to paint the walls?

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_
16. \_\_\_\_\_
17. \_\_\_\_\_
18. \_\_\_\_\_
19. \_\_\_\_\_
20. \_\_\_\_\_
21. \_\_\_\_\_
22. \_\_\_\_\_
23. \_\_\_\_\_
24. \_\_\_\_\_

# HAD TO / WILL HAVE TO

Change the following sentences to the past.

Examples: I have to find him. I had to find him.  
She has to be careful. She had to be careful.

1. I have to start work at 8.

2. He has to send it by post.

3. She has to get up early.

4. The secretary has to type the letters quickly.

5. I have to have breakfast early.

6. I have to go to bed early.

7. He has to buy a lot of books.

8. They have to carry the chairs upstairs.

9. We have to get there before they do.

10. The people have to evacuate the town.

11. The students have to study hard.

12. The driver has to stop.

13. The policeman have to follow him very carefully.

14. He has to read the letter secretly.

15. She has to go the grocer's.

16. He has to translate it immediately.

17. You have to lend him some money.

18. They have to work overtime.

19. We have to stay at a hotel.

20. He has to open the store at 8.30.

21. I have to sell my car.

22. She has to wash the dishes.

23. They have to clean the house.

24. We have to be quick.

# HAD TO / WILL HAVE TO

Change the sentences **above** first to **question** then to **future**.

Example: I **have to** find him.

Did you **have to** find him?

I **will have to** find him.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_
16. \_\_\_\_\_
17. \_\_\_\_\_
18. \_\_\_\_\_
19. \_\_\_\_\_
20. \_\_\_\_\_
21. \_\_\_\_\_
22. \_\_\_\_\_
23. \_\_\_\_\_
24. \_\_\_\_\_

# HAVE TO / HAS TO / HAD TO - INFORMATION QUESTIONS

Ask information questions for the underlined words.

Examples: They have to start work at 8.  
He had to sell his house.

When do they have to start work?  
What did he have to sell?

1. She has to phone her mother.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. They had to postpone the meeting.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. We have to clean the house.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. He has to do his job carefully.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. He had to borrow a lot of money.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. They have to work eight hours a day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. She has to go to work by train.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The students have to study hard.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. He has to go to hospital twice a week.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. The postman has to deliver the letters.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. We have to stay at a hotel.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. I have to catch the 8.20 train.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. We have to be there at 5.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. She had to walk five kilometers.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. I had to wait for one hour.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. He has to wear the blue one.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. She doesn't have to water the garden because it is raining.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. He doesn't have to get up early on Sunday.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. He didn't have to work yesterday.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. You have to stop when the light is red.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. I will have to do it tomorrow.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. She has to type the letters.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. They will have to see him.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. They had to resign.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# MUST / MUSTN'T / NEEDN'T

Make sentences beginning with **I** or **you** using **must**, **mustn't** or **needn't**.

Examples: smoke at a gas station You **mustn't** smoke at a gas station.  
drink coffee every day You **needn't** drink coffee every day.  
stop at a red light You **must** stop at a red light.

1. take medicine when you are well

2. get up early on holiday

3. forget your umbrella when it is raining

4. memorize the whole text

5. leave the class before the teacher

6. make a noise when the baby is asleep

7. drive fast when the weather is foggy

8. be careful when you are driving

9. pen the window because it is very cold

10. study if you want to pass the exam

11. take your umbrella if the weather is fine

12. water the garden because it is going to rain soon

13. run in the classroom

14. wear warm clothes in winter

15. eat yoghurt with fish

16. eat too much because you are getting fat

17. polish your shoes because they are very dirty

18. see a doctor because you look very ill

19. watch TV while doing your homework

20. shave every day

21. get up early if you want to catch the first train

22. take a taxi. It is very near.

23. tell him about it. It is a secret.

24. phone him. He will be here in the afternoon.

# MAY (permission)

Ask questions using **May I** or **May we**.

**Example:** You want to go out. May I go out?

You want to play tennis. May we play tennis?

**1.** You want to open a window.

**2.** You and your friends want to go home.

**3.** You want to speak Turkish.

**4.** You want to have some more potatoes.

**5.** You want to drink a cup of tea.

**6.** You and your brother want to watch TV.

**7.** You and your friends want to play a word game.

**8.** You want to leave the class before the bell rings.

**9.** You want to turn on the light.

**10.** You want to borrow your friend's pen.

**11.** You want to use your friend's dictionary.

**12.** You want to turn off the radio.

**13.** You and your friends want to play football.

**14.** You want to ask a question.

**15.** You want to put on your coat.

**16.** You want to take off your jacket.

**17.** You want to answer the questions.

**18.** You want to read the passage.

**19.** You and your friend want to act out the dialogue.

**20.** You want to close the door.

**21.** You want to go to the toilet.

**22.** You want to look at your friend's paper.

**23.** You want to use your father's car.

**24.** You want to make a phone call.

# MAY (Possibility)

Complete the following sentences using **may**.

**Example:** The weather is cloudy. It **may** rain.  
The questions are easy. I **may** get a good mark.

1. There is a traffic jam. We

2. Our team is playing well. We

3. The car is slowing down. It

4. The policeman is looking at the tall man suspiciously. He

5. He feels ill. He

6. The referee is looking at his watch. He

7. They are looking at "the house for sale" carefully. They

8. He is going into the travel agency. He

9. The children are going to the playground. They

10. The postman is coming towards me. He

11. The man is taking out his wallet. He

12. The boy is studying hard. He

13. The woman is going into the post office. She

14. The man is asking the policeman something. He

15. The child is taking out his notebook. He

16. I haven't got any money. I

17. The woman is going to the airport. She

18. I am learning English. I

19. The boy is climbing up a tree. He

20. He is studying law. He

21. We are making a lot of noise. The baby

22. The boy is yawning. He

23. The man is taking off his clothes. He

24. The car is cheap enough. We

# MAY-MIGHT (Possibility)

*Rewrite the sentences above using **might** instead of **may**.*

**Examples:** The weather is cloudy. *It **might** rain.*  
The questions are easy. *I **might** get a good mark.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_
16. \_\_\_\_\_
17. \_\_\_\_\_
18. \_\_\_\_\_
19. \_\_\_\_\_
20. \_\_\_\_\_
21. \_\_\_\_\_
22. \_\_\_\_\_
23. \_\_\_\_\_
24. \_\_\_\_\_

# USED TO

## USING USED TO (HABITUAL PAST) AND BE USED TO

|   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) Jack <u>used to live</u> in Chicago.  | In (a): At a time in the past, Jack lived in Chicago, but he does not live in Chicago now. Used to expresses a habit, activity, or situation that existed in the past but which no longer exists.                    |
| (b) Mary <u>is used to</u> cold weather.<br>(c) Mary <u>is accustomed to</u> cold weather.  | <b>Be used to</b> means <b>be accustomed to</b> . (b) and (c) have the same meaning: Living in a cold climate is usual and normal to Mary. Cold weather, snow, and ice do not seem strange to her.                   |
| COMPARE:<br>(d) Jack <u>used to live</u> in Chicago.<br>(e) Mary <u>is used to living</u> in a cold climate.<br>She <u>is accustomed to living</u> there. | To express habitual past, <b>used</b> is followed by an infinitive, e.g., <b>to live</b> as in (d).<br><b>Be used to</b> and <b>be accustomed to</b> are followed by an <b>-ing</b> verb form (a gerund), as in (e). |
| (f) Bob moved to Alaska. After a while he <u>got used to</u> / <u>got accustomed to</u> living in a cold climate.   | In the expressions <b>get used to</b> and <b>get accustomed to</b> , <b>get</b> means <b>became</b> .  |

Make sentences with used to as in the example.

Examples: I - learn French      I used to learn French but I don't anymore.  
                  He - a teacher      He used to be a teacher but he isn't anymore.

1. He - smoke

---

2. My father - play football

---

3. She - a secretary

---

4. My mother - drink milk

---

5. They - go to the cinema

---

6. He - study a lot

---

7. She - watch TV

---

8. The teacher - give a lot of homework

---

9. Ali - come late Sema - play chess

---

10. Necdet – fat

---

11. Adam - play tennis

---

12. They - good players

---

13. I - speak German

---

14. My sister – cry

---

15. Mary - get up early

# USED TO (Question – Negative Answer)

Ask questions and give **negative answers**.

**Example:** I - learn French

Did you use to learn French? No. I **didn't use to** learn French.

1. He – smoke

---

2. My father - play football

---

3. She - a secretary

---

4. My mother - drink milk

---

5. They - go to the cinema

---

6. He - study a lot

---

7. She - watch TV

---

8. The teacher - give a lot of homework

---

9. Ali - come late Sema - play chess

---

10. Necdet – fat

---

11. Adam - play tennis

---

12. They - good players

---

13. I - speak German

---

14. My sister – cry

---

15. Mary - get up early

# USED TO (Wh-Yes/No questions)

*Answer the questions.*

1. What did you use to do when you were a small child? (bite / nails)

2. Did you use to play football when you were at university? (+)

3. What did your father use to do when he was abroad? (smoke a pipe)

4. Did you use to be a helpful student when you were at school? (-)

5. What did you use to do when you were in ? (go swimming every day)

6. Where did you use to live when you were in France? (Paris)

7. Did you use to speak English when you were a student in Australia? (+)

8. What did you use to be interested in when you were a child? (ride a bike)

9. How did your grandpa use to walk when he was younger? (fast)

# USED TO

*Complete the sentences.*

**Example:** Sarah used to be fat, but now she is thin.

1. I used to visit them every weekend, but\_\_\_

2. People used to believe\_\_\_

3. My daughter used to\_\_\_when\_\_\_

4. I used to smoke\_\_\_ but\_\_\_

5. He\_\_\_ when he was at university, but \_\_\_

6. Did you\_\_\_ early when\_\_\_? Yes, I\_\_\_

7. What did\_\_\_ do when\_\_\_?

8. I used\_\_\_ go riding a bike\_\_\_

9. I used to be a successful businessman, but\_\_\_

10. My wife used to cook\_\_\_ but\_\_\_

# SHALL I...? (Offer/Suggestion)

Make offers using **Shall I** and give answers.

**Example:** bring you a cup of coffee  
change the cassette

Shall I bring you a cup of coffee? No, thanks.  
Shall I change the cassette? Yes, please.

1. open the door for you

2. give you a pen

3. carry your suitcase

4. answer the telephone for you

5. bring you an aspirin

6. send this letter for you

7. turn on the lights

8. speak more slowly

9. get you a cup of coffee

10. mow the lawn for you

11. take you to your room

12. put the vase on the table

13. clean the room for you

14. type the report for you

15. call the man

16. speak to the manager

17. start the engine for you

18. wash the dishes for you

19. paint that wall for you

20. polish your shoes

21. fill in the form for you

22. call a taxi

23. open a window

24. cook something for you

# WOULD LIKE

Use **would like** instead of **want** in the following sentences.

Examples: I want a cup of tea. I **would like** a cup of tea.  
I want to have a rest. I **would like** to have a rest.

1. He wants some ice-cream.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. They want to go home.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I want to stay here.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. She wants to learn English.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. They want some beef.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The policeman wants to ask you some questions.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. We want to stay up late.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Do you want to go out?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Do you want some more soup?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Do you want a piece of cake?  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. I don't want to go there.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. He doesn't want to see me.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. They don't want to work there.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Do they want to live here?  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Where do you want to go?  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. What do you want to eat?  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. What do you want to do now?  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. What does he want?  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. What cities do you want to see?  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. Where do they want to stay?  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. They want some money.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. She doesn't want to stay at that hotel.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. Don't you want to visit them?  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. I don't want to have fish.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# SHOULD (Advice)

Make sentences with **should** or **shouldn't**.

Examples: He is ill. He should see a doctor.  
I am fat. You shouldn't eat so much.

1. He can't speak English well.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. He coughs a lot.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. You are always late.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. He works all the time.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Hasan makes a lot of mistakes.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The children are making a lot of noise.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. He spends a lot of money.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. She always daydreams in class.     
\_\_\_\_\_
9. They go out every evening.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Your father comes home very late.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Tom is very thin.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. You don't look after your grandfather.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. The children are playing in the street.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Your mother is ill.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. I am hungry.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. The teacher is trying to teach us something.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. I have lost my pen.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. That man is driving very fast.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. There are so many new words in this passage.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. The old man can't cross the street.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. He never gambles a lot.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. He always leaves his books at home.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. She always gets bad marks.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. You look tired.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# SHOULD HAVE DONE

Make sentences using **should + have + verb<sub>3</sub>** or **shouldn't + have + verb<sub>3</sub>**.

**Example:** The man drove very fast. He had an accident.

He shouldn't have driven so fast.

He **didn't** understand the subject and he didn't ask the teacher.

He should have asked the teacher.

1. He didn't study for the exam. He got a bad mark.

---

2. His car was stolen. He didn't inform the police.

---

3. He saw the red light. He didn't stop.

---

4. The boy wasn't careful. He broke the window.

---

5. The man earned a lot of money. He spent all of his money.

---

6. The student did his homework quickly. He made a lot of mistakes.

---

7. He left his book on the table. His little sister tore it up.

---

8. He didn't finish his work. He went to bed.

---

9. I didn't lock the door. Somebody entered the house.

---

10. A dog bit the child. They didn't take him to hospital.

---

11. The men were exhausted. They had worked for ten hours without a break.

---

12. The teacher asked very difficult questions. Nobody answered them.

---

13. He got up late. He missed the first lesson.

---

14. The man left his office in a hurry. He forgot to put the lights off.

---

15. The weather was very cold. I didn't put on my coat.

---

16. I received a letter from a friend. I didn't reply to it.

---

17. The man was ill. He didn't take his medicine.

---

18. I lent him some money. He didn't give it back.

---

19. The man was very ill. Nobody visited him.

---

20. She left the ink pot on the desk. It was spilt.

---

21. The car stopped suddenly without a warning. The lorry behind hit the car.

---

22. The woman talked on the phone a lot. The milk boiled over.

---

23. I didn't set the alarm clock. I got up late.

---

24. The secretary made a lot of mistakes. The boss sacked her.

---

# OUGHT TO / OUGHTN'T TO

Make sentences with **ought to** or **oughtn't to**.

Example: He is ill. He **ought to** see a doctor.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_
16. \_\_\_\_\_
17. \_\_\_\_\_
18. \_\_\_\_\_
19. \_\_\_\_\_
20. \_\_\_\_\_
21. \_\_\_\_\_
22. \_\_\_\_\_
23. \_\_\_\_\_
24. \_\_\_\_\_

# HAD BETTER

Make sentences using **had better**.

Examples: My car is old.

The man is very angry.

You'd better sell it.

You'd better not talk to him now.

1. My son looks ill.

2. We are very thirsty.

3. Your father looks tired.

4. That chair is broken.

5. The lift is out of order.

6. It is half past five.

7. The train will be delayed.

8. It is getting dark.

9. I have lost my passport.

10. It is getting cold.

11. I feel sleepy.

12. It is snowing outside.

13. This parcel is very heavy.

14. This room is a bit dark.

15. The lights have gone out.

16. My watch has stopped.

17. The manager is about to come.

18. It is eleven o'clock.

19. They are still waiting for you.

20. This book is very difficult.

21. That car looks very old.

22. The meeting starts at 10.15.

23. The baby is crying.

24. I haven't got any money.

# GIVING ADVICE

a) I would... if I were you.    b) You should...    c) Why don't you...?

**Give advice.**

**Example:** Why don't you call the police? (I'd...if...)    \_\_\_\_\_ I'd call the police if I were you. \_\_\_\_\_

1. I don't feel well. (If I....)

2. I'm very tired. (I think it will...)

3. My mother eats a lot. (I think she should...)

4. It is hot outside. (My advice is...)

5. I'm very short. (If you take my...)

6. My father drinks a lot of alcohol. (If I...)

7. I want to have a good job. ( I advise...)

8. He always gets low marks. (If I...)

9. I have a terrible toothache. (If I...)

10. My uncle smokes a lot. (I think it...)

11. Some lorry drivers don't obey the traffic rules. (I think...)

12. I've got a bad cold. (Why don't...?)

13. I can't wake up in the mornings. (I would...if...)

14. My car uses a lot of petrol. (If I...)

15. I've lost my driving license. (If you take my...)

16. You should buy a new car. (If I...)

17. If I were you, I'd go to university. (Why don't...?)

18. You should eat less. (I would...if...)

19. If you want my advice, you should play basketball. (I think...)

20. If I were you, I'd keep on a diet. (Why don't...?)

21. I'd study hard if I were you. (I think...)

22. I think you should get an aspirin. (I advise you to...)

23. I advise you not to smoke so much. (I think it will...)

24. If I were you, I wouldn't drive fast. (You should...)

# GERUND-INFINITIVE

## INFINITIVE

|   |  |                           |                              |
|---|--|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>VERB + INFINITIVE</b><br>(a) <i>I hope to see</i> you again soon.<br>(b) He <i>promised to be</i> here by ten.<br>(c) He <i>promised not to be</i> late. | Some verbs are followed immediately by an infinitive, as in (a) and (b). See Group A below.<br><br>Negative form: <b>not</b> precedes the infinitive.  |                           |                              |
| <b>VERB + (PRO)NOUN + INFINITIVE</b><br>(d) Mr. Lee <i>told me to be</i> here at ten o'clock.<br>(e) The police <i>ordered the driver to stop</i> .         | Some verbs are followed by a (pro)noun and then an infinitive, as in (d) and (e). See Group B below.   |                           |                              |
| (f) <i>I was told to be</i> here at ten o'clock.<br>(g) The driver <i>was ordered to stop</i> .   | These verbs are followed immediately by an infinitive when they are used in the passive, as in (f) and (g).  |                           |                              |
| (h) <i>I expect to pass</i> the test.<br>(i) <i>I expect Mary to pass</i> the test.   | <i>Ask, expect, would like, want, and need</i> may or may not be followed by a (pro)noun object. COMPARE:<br>In (h): I think I will pass the test.<br>In (i): I think Mary will pass the test. |                           |                              |
| <b>GROUP A: VERB + INFINITIVE</b>   |  |                           |                              |
| <i>hope to</i>  | <i>promise to</i>  | <i>seem to</i>            | <i>ask to</i>                |
| <i>plan to</i>  | <i>agree to</i>  | <i>appear to</i>          | <i>expect to</i>             |
| <i>intend to*</i>   | <i>offer to</i>  | <i>pretend to</i>         | <i>would like to</i>         |
| <i>decide to</i>  | <i>refuse to</i>   |                           | <i>want to</i>               |
|   |  |                           | <i>need to</i>               |
| <b>GROUP B: VERB + (PRO)NOUN + INFINITIVE</b>   |  |                           |                              |
| <i>tell someone to</i>  | <i>invite someone to</i>   | <i>require someone to</i> | <i>ask someone to</i>        |
| <i>advise someone to**</i>  | <i>permit someone to</i>   | <i>order someone to</i>   | <i>expect someone to</i>     |
| <i>encourage someone to</i>   | <i>allow someone to</i>  | <i>force someone to</i>   | <i>would like someone to</i> |
| <i>remind someone to</i>  | <i>warn someone to</i>   |                           | <i>want someone to</i>       |
|   |  |                           | <i>need someone to</i>       |

\**Intend* is usually followed by an infinitive (*I intend to go to the meeting*) but sometimes may be followed by a gerund (*I intend going to the meeting*) with no change in meaning.

\*\*A gerund is used after *advise* (active) if there is no (pro)noun object. COMPARE:

- (1) He *advised buying* a Fiat.
- (2) He *advised me to buy* a Fiat. *I was advised to buy* a Fiat.

Complete the following sentences using infinitive with **to**.

Example: He wants \_\_\_\_\_ *He wants to learn English.*  
I forgot \_\_\_\_\_ *I forgot to phone him.*

1. He decided

2. I plan

3. He doesn't want

4. I like

5. They prefer

6. He told me

7. She asked me

8. I expect them

9. I hope

10. She hesitated

11. He promised

12. My father refused

13. failed

14. He threatened us

15. He managed

16. I tried

17. He forced me

18. I ordered them

19. I warned him

20. He reminded me

21. She agreed

22. I invited him

23. He is learning

24. He pretended

## GERUND

| VERB + GERUND   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) I <b>enjoy</b> <b>playing</b> tennis.                                       | Gerunds are used as the objects of certain verbs. In (a), <b>enjoy</b> is followed by a gerund ( <b>playing</b> ). <b>Enjoy</b> is not followed by an infinitive. <b>INCORRECT:</b> <i>I enjoy to play tennis.</i> Common verbs that are followed by gerunds are given in the list below. |
| (b) Joe <b>quit</b> <b>smoking</b> .<br>(c) Joe <b>gave up</b> <b>smoking</b> . | (b) and (c) have the same meaning. Some two-word verbs, e.g., <b>give up</b> , are followed by gerunds. These two-word verbs are given in parentheses in the list below.  |
| VERB + GERUND   |   |
| enjoy   | quit (give up)  |
| appreciate  | finish (get through)  |
| mind  | stop*   |
|   | avoid   |
|   | postpone (put off)  |
|   | delay   |
|   | keep (keep on)  |
|   | consider (think about)  |
|   | discuss (talk about)  |
|   | mention   |
|   | suggest   |

\***Stop** can also be followed immediately by an infinitive of purpose (**in order to**).

COMPARE the following:

(1) **stop** + gerund: When the professor entered the room, the students **stopped talking**. The room became quiet.  
(2) **stop** + infinitive of purpose: While I was walking down the street, I ran into an old friend. I **stopped to talk** to him. (I stopped walking **in order to talk** to him.)

Complete the following sentences using gerund.

Examples: He likes He likes swimming.  
She prefers She prefers drinking tea.

1. He denied \_\_\_\_\_
2. When the teacher came in, the students stopped \_\_\_\_\_
3. He can't stand \_\_\_\_\_
4. I suggested \_\_\_\_\_
5. I prevented them from \_\_\_\_\_
6. He gave up \_\_\_\_\_
7. He is interested in \_\_\_\_\_
8. She keeps \_\_\_\_\_
9. You'd better avoid \_\_\_\_\_

10. He is considering \_\_\_\_\_

11. I dislike \_\_\_\_\_

12. I like \_\_\_\_\_

13. My father  
hates \_\_\_\_\_

14. He prefers \_\_\_\_\_

15. I finished \_\_\_\_\_

16. That house  
needs \_\_\_\_\_

17. I remember \_\_\_\_\_

18. He is afraid of \_\_\_\_\_

19. We are looking forward  
to \_\_\_\_\_

20. Would you mind \_\_ ?  
\_\_\_\_\_

21. He enjoys \_\_\_\_\_

22. It is no use \_\_\_\_\_

## GERUND - Asking Questions

*Answer these questions using a gerund.*

1. What caused your sister not to complete her homework? (be ill)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What made you feel sad? (your friend didn't give his book to you.)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What is impossible for a student?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What makes your parents feel disappointed?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What is necessary to be a student at university? (successful)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What is enjoyable for you on Sundays?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. What caused your aunt to go to hospital yesterday?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. What does your mother always complain about?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. What do most of the students always complain about?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. What is easy for a dentist?  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. What causes housewives to get tired?  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. What do you usually have arguments with your family about?  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. What annoys your teachers most?  
\_\_\_\_\_

14. What caused you not to trust your friend?

---

15. What made your father punish you?

---

## GERUND -

1. My father drives fast. It frightens me. (gerund)

---

2. John always comes into class late. This makes our teacher get angry. (gerund)

---

3. He isn't a very punctual boy. This makes him unreliable. (gerund)

---

4. You cook the meat fast. It makes it tough. (gerund)

---

5. My uncle always has to do the same thing in the factory. He is tired of it. (gerund)

---

6. She is very short. It is a serious disadvantage in her career. (gerund)

---

7. My father took me to the cinema last night. I enjoyed it. (gerund)

---

8. Mary is sometimes rude. Sue can't help it. (gerund)

---

9. Don't buy it. It is not worth it. (gerund)

---

10. Kate has to do a lot of homework every day. She is tired of it. (gerund)

---

11. My deskmate doesn't know how to swim. He is worried about it. (gerund)

---

12. My son doesn't want to watch this film. He is afraid of it. (gerund)

---

13. My wife takes some exercises every day. It makes her keep fit. (gerund)

---

14. Some of our classmates failed in English. This made them feel unhappy. (gerund)

---

15. It is very wonderful to go to the Canary Islands. (gerund)

---

16. It is harmful to smoke. (gerund)

---

17. It is useful to know how to drive a car. (gerund)

---

18. My brother went abroad. This caused my parents to feel worried. (gerund)

---

19. I got a good mark from the quiz. This made me happy. (gerund)

---

20. I couldn't pay the bill in the shop. This caused me to be ashamed. (gerund)

21. You offer her to pay for her bills. I don't like it. (gerund)

22. I smoke. It makes me feel sick. (gerund)

23. It takes a long time to afforest the land. (gerund)

24. A lot of forests burned in 1994. This made us feel worried. (gerund)

25. It is impossible to park your car along the streets in Istanbul during office hours. (gerund)

26. I have to get up early every day. It makes me feel annoyed. (gerund)

## GERUND or INFINITIVE

Some verbs can be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund, sometimes with no difference in meaning, as in Group A below, and sometimes with a difference in meaning, as in Group B below.

### GROUP A: VERB + INFINITIVE OR GERUND (WITH NO DIFFERENCE IN MEANING)

*begin*      *like*      *hate*  
*start*      *love*      *can't stand*  
*continue*      *prefer\**      *can't bear*

The verbs in Group A may be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund with little or no difference in meaning.

(a) *It began to rain.* / *It began raining.*  
(b) *I started to work.* / *I started working.*  
(c) *It was beginning to rain.*

In (a): There is no difference between "began to rain" and "began raining."

If the main verb is progressive, an infinitive (not a gerund) is usually used.

### GROUP B: VERB + INFINITIVE OR GERUND (WITH A DIFFERENCE IN MEANING)

*remember*      *regret*  
*forget*      *try*

The verbs in Group B may be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund, but the meaning is different.

(d) Judy always *remembers to lock* the door.  
(e) Sam often *forgets to lock* the door.  
(f) I *remember seeing* the Alps for the first time. The sight was impressive.  
(g) I'll never *forget seeing* the Alps for the first time.

**Remember** + infinitive = remember to perform responsibility, duty, or task, as in (d).

**Forget** + infinitive = forget to perform a responsibility, duty, or task, as in (e).

**Remember** + gerund = remember (recall) something that happened in the past, as in (f).

**Forget** + gerund = forget something that happened in the past, as in (g).\*\*

(h) I *regret to tell* you that you failed the test.

**Regret** + infinitive = regret to say, to tell someone, to inform someone of some bad news, as in (h).

(i) I *regret lending* him some money. He never paid me back.

**Regret** + gerund = regret something that happened in the past, as in (i).

(j) I'm *trying to learn* English.

**Try** + infinitive = make an effort, as in (j).

(k) The room was hot. I *tried opening* the window, but that didn't help. So I *tried turning* on the fan, but I was still hot. Finally, I turned on the air conditioner.

**Try** + gerund = experiment with a new or different approach to see if it works, as in (k).

\*Notice the patterns with *prefer*:

*prefer* + gerund: I *prefer staying* home to *going* to the concert.

*prefer* + infinitive: I *prefer to stay* home than *(to) go* to the concert.

\*\***Forget** followed by a gerund usually occurs in a negative sentence or a question: e.g., *I'll never forget*, *I can't forget*, *Have you ever forgotten*, and *Can you ever forget* can be followed by a gerund phrase.

Rewrite the following sentences using gerund or infinitive (with or without to) forms of the verbs in brackets: i.e. **do**, **to do** or **doing**.

**Examples:** He is interested in (play) \_\_\_\_ football.

He is interested in playing football.

He wants (be) \_\_\_\_ a teacher.

He wants to be a teacher.

1. I used (drink) \_\_\_\_ milk every day when I was a child.

2. I am used to (stay up) \_\_\_\_ late.

3. The manager would like (speak) \_\_\_\_ to you.

4. The teacher doesn't permit (speak) \_\_\_\_ Turkish during the English lessons.

5. I remember (go) \_\_\_\_ to primary school with my grandfather.

6. He began (paint) \_\_\_\_ the walls at seven and worked till twelve.

7. The policeman caught the man (steal) \_\_\_\_.

8. They made us (wait) \_\_\_\_ for an hour.

9. I heard them (talk) \_\_\_\_ about you.

10. The boss wants you (come) \_\_\_\_ on time.

11. Would you mind (wait) \_\_\_\_ for a few minutes?

12. She enjoys (read) \_\_\_\_ English books.

13. My father didn't let me (go) \_\_\_\_ to the football match.

14. You ought (study) \_\_\_\_ hard.

15. You'd better (see) \_\_\_\_ a doctor.

16. They decided (hold) \_\_\_\_ the meeting next week.

17. I hope you won't forget (give) \_\_\_\_ this book to your father.

18. He went on (speak) \_\_\_\_ although nobody was paying attention.

19. Why do you keep on (make) \_\_\_\_ the same mistakes?

20. I found him (lie) \_\_\_\_ on his bed.

21. I'd rather (go) out than (stay) at home.

22. The boss got me (work) late last night.

23. He insisted on (come) with us.

24. He advised me (see) a doctor.

### REFERENCE LIST OF VERBS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS

|                |   |                |   |
|----------------|---|----------------|---|
| 1. admit       | He <b>admitted stealing</b> the money.              | 20. postpone   | Let's <b>postpone leaving</b> until tomorrow.   |
| 2. advise      | She <b>advised waiting</b> until tomorrow.          | 21. practice   | The athlete <b>practiced throwing</b> the ball. |
| 3. anticipate  | I <b>anticipate having</b> a good time on vacation. | 22. quit       | He <b>quit trying</b> to solve the problem.     |
| 4. appreciate  | I <b>appreciated hearing</b> from them.             | 23. recall     | I don't <b>recall meeting</b> him before.       |
| 5. avoid       | He <b>avoided answering</b> my question.            | 24. recollect  | I don't <b>recollect meeting</b> him before.    |
| 6. complete    | I finally <b>completed writing</b> my term paper.   | 25. recommend  | She <b>recommended seeing</b> the show.         |
| 7. consider    | I <b>will consider going</b> with you.              | 26. regret     | I <b>regret telling</b> him my secret.          |
| 8. delay       | He <b>delayed leaving</b> for school.               | 27. remember   | I can <b>remember meeting</b> him when I        |
| 9. deny        | She <b>denied committing</b> the crime.             | 28. resent     | I <b>resent her interfering</b> in my business. |
| 10. discuss    | They <b>discussed opening</b> a new business.       | 29. resist     | I <b>couldn't resist eating</b> the dessert.    |
| 11. dislike    | I <b>dislike driving</b> long distances.            | 30. risk       | She <b>risks losing</b> all of her money.       |
| 12. enjoy      | We <b>enjoyed visiting</b> them.                    | 31. stop       | She <b>stopped going</b> to classes when she    |
| 13. finish     | She <b>finished studying</b> about ten.             | 32. suggest    | She <b>suggested going</b> to a movie.          |
| 14. forget     | I'll never <b>forget visiting</b> Napoleon's tomb.  | 33. tolerate   | She <b>won't tolerate cheating</b> during an    |
| 15. can't help | I <b>can't help worrying</b> about it.              | 34. understand | I <b>don't understand his leaving</b> school.   |
| 16. keep       | I <b>keep hoping</b> he will come.                  |                |   |
| 17. mention    | She <b>mentioned going</b> to a movie.              |                |   |
| 18. mind       | Would you <b>mind helping</b> me with this?         |                |   |
| 19. miss       | I <b>miss being</b> with my family.                 |                |   |

### REFERENCE LIST OF VERBS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES

#### A. VERBS FOLLOWED IMMEDIATELY BY AN INFINITIVE

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 1. afford    | I <b>can't afford to buy</b> it.                             |
| 2. agree     | They <b>agreed to help</b> us.                               |
| 3. appear    | She <b>appears to be</b> tired.                              |
| 4. arrange   | I'll <b>arrange to meet</b> you at the airport.              |
| 5. ask       | He <b>asked to come</b> with us.                             |
| 6. beg       | He <b>begged to come</b> with us.                            |
| 7. care      | I <b>don't care to see</b> that show.                        |
| 8. claim     | She <b>claims to know</b> a famous movie star.               |
| 9. consent   | She finally <b>consented to marry</b> him.                   |
| 10. decide   | I <b>have decided to leave</b> on Monday.                    |
| 11. demand   | I <b>demand to know</b> who is responsible.                  |
| 12. deserve  | She <b>deserves to win</b> the prize.                        |
| 13. expect   | I <b>expect to enter</b> graduate school in the fall.        |
| 14. fail     | She <b>failed to return</b> the book to the library on time. |
| 15. forget   | I <b>forgot to mail</b> the letter.                          |
| 16. hesitate | <b>Don't hesitate to ask</b> for my help.                    |
| 17. hope     | Jack <b>hopes to arrive</b> next week.                       |
| 18. learn    | He <b>learned to play</b> the piano.                         |
| 19. manage   | She <b>managed to finish</b> her work early.                 |
| 20. mean     | I <b>didn't mean to hurt</b> your feelings.                  |
| 21. need     | I <b>need to have</b> your opinion.                          |
| 22. offer    | They <b>offered to help</b> us.                              |
| 23. plan     | I <b>am planning to have</b> a party.                        |

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| 24. prepare   | We <b>prepared to welcome</b> them.          |
| 25. pretend   | He <b>pretends not to understand</b> .       |
| 26. promise   | I <b>promise not to be</b> late.             |
| 27. refuse    | I <b>refuse to believe</b> his story.        |
| 28. regret    | I <b>regret to tell</b> you that you failed. |
| 29. remember  | I <b>remembered to lock</b> the door.        |
| 30. seem      | That cat <b>seems to be</b> friendly.        |
| 31. struggle  | I <b>struggled to stay</b> awake.            |
| 32. swear     | She <b>swore to tell</b> the truth.          |
| 33. threaten  | She <b>threatened to tell</b> my parents.    |
| 34. volunteer | He <b>volunteered to help</b> us.            |
| 35. wait      | I <b>will wait to hear</b> from you.         |
| 36. want      | I <b>want to tell</b> you something.         |
| 37. wish      | She <b>wishes to come</b> with us.           |

# PASSIVE VOICE

## FORMING THE PASSIVE

| S                    | V                 | O        | Form of the passive: <b>be</b> + <i>past participle</i> .   |
|----------------------|-------------------|----------|---|
| ACTIVE: (a) Mary     | <b>helped</b>     | the boy. | In the passive, <i>the object</i> of an active verb becomes <i>the subject</i> of the passive verb: "the boy" in (a) becomes the subject of the passive verb in (b). (a) and (b) have the same meaning. |
| PASSIVE: (b) The boy | <b>was helped</b> | by Mary. | Only transitive verbs (verbs that are followed by an object) are used in the passive. It is not possible to use verbs such as <b>happen, sleep, come, and seem</b> (intransitive verbs) in the passive. |

**Tense      Subject      Verb      Object**

### Simple Present

Active: Susan writes a letter.  
Passive: A letter is written by Susan.

### Simple Past

Active: Susan wrote a letter.  
Passive: A letter was written by Susan.

### Present Perfect

Active: Susan has written a letter.  
Passive: A letter has been written by Susan.

### Future I

Active: Susan will write a letter.  
Passive: A letter will be written by Susan.

### Modal

Active: Susan can write a letter.  
Passive: A letter can be written by Susan.

### Present Progressive

Active: Susan is writing a letter.  
Passive: A letter is being written by Susan.

### Past Progressive

Active: Susan was writing a letter.  
Passive: A letter was being written by Susan.

### Past Perfect

Active: Susan had written a letter.  
Passive: A letter had been written by Susan.

### Future II

Active: Susan will have written a letter.  
Passive: A letter will have been written by Susan.

### Conditional I

Active: Susan would write a letter.

**Passive:** A letter would be written by Susan.

#### Conditional II

**Active:** Susan would have written a letter.

**Passive:** A letter would have been written by Susan.

#### Passive Sentences with Two Objects

|                 | <u>Subject</u> | <u>Verb</u> | <u>Object 1</u> | <u>Object 2</u> |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Active:</b>  | Susan          | wrote       | a letter        | to me.          |
| <b>Passive:</b> | A letter       | was written | to me           | by Susan.       |
| <b>Passive:</b> | A letter       | was written | a letter        | by Susan.       |

## PASSIVE VOICE (Simple Present)

Change the following sentences to passive voice.

**Examples:** They check every passenger. Every passenger is checked.  
He sends the parcels every day. The parcels are sent every day.

1. That man cleans the school every day.

---

2. The postman delivers the letters every day.

---

3. The conductor checks our tickets.

---

4. They publish new books every year

---

5. My father washes his car every week.

---

6. They speak French in this town.

---

7. Somebody collects the garbage every week.

---

8. Porters carry suitcases

---

9. The police catch criminals.

---

10. Mr. Smith opens the store at 9 o'clock.

---

11. They turn off the lights at 11 p.m.

---

12. The manager writes a report at the end of each month.

---

13. They grow tea in a few countries.

---

14. They produce coal in some cities.

---

15. They don't sell cars on installment plan.

---

16. She doesn't sweep the floors every morning.

---

17. Does he paint his house every year?

---

18. Do they ever help you?

---

19. What time do they serve dinner?

---

## PASSIVE VOICE (Present PROGRESSIVE)

*Change the following sentences to passive voice.*

Examples: Somebody is repairing the car.

They are disturbing us **PROGRESSIVELY**.

The car is being repaired.

We are being disturbed PROGRESSIVELY.

1. They are cleaning the rooms

---

2. Mary is washing the windows.

---

3. She's dusting the tables.

---

4. They're painting the walls.

---

5. The mother is washing the dishes.

---

6. The girl is sweeping the carpets.

---

7. The boy is carrying the chairs.

---

8. The man is repairing the TV

---

9. Somebody is following us.

---

10. They are building a new suspension bridge.

---

11. The lorry is towing the car.

---

12. They are sending the goods this afternoon.

---

13. The teacher is explaining the new words.

---

14. The director is signing the documents now.

---

15. They are not paving the way now.

---

**16.** Nobody is looking after him now

---

**17.** Are they typing the reports now?

---

**18.** Is he still helping them?

---

**19.** What are they bringing?

---

## PASSIVE VOICE (Simple Past)

*Change the following sentences to passive voice.*

**Examples:** They killed a lot of people. A lot of people were killed.  
They repaired the car. The car was repaired.

**1.** They paid the bill yesterday.

---

**2.** Somebody broke the glass.

---

**3.** They hanged the murderer.

---

**4.** They evacuated the town in six hours.

---

**5.** The cat ate the meat while the woman was outside.

---

**6.** They sold the old house.

---

**7.** Somebody stole my wallet.

---

**8.** Some people occupied the embassy yesterday.

---

**9.** They stopped the cars.

---

**10.** The police arrested the burglars last night.

---

**11.** The teacher punished the students.

---

**12.** The referee expelled two of the players.

---

**13.** William Shakespeare wrote this book.

---

**14.** Did they sign the contract?

---

**15.** Did the tall boxer beat the short one?

---

**16.** The woman didn't clean the house.

---

**17.** They didn't put off the meeting in spite of the fog.

---

**18.** She typed the letters but she didn't post them.

---

**19.** Where did they send the furniture?

---

**20.** What did they repair?

---

21. When did they build that house?

22. Nobody solved the problem.

23. They didn't return the books.

24. Why did they change the name of the street?

## PASSIVE VOICE(Past Progressive)

Change the following sentences to passive voice.

Examples: Somebody **was feeding** the animals.  
They **were serving** the food.

The animals were being fed.

The food was being served.

1. He was washing the car.

2. The woman was hovering the carpets.

3. They were paving the road.

4. She was packing the suitcases.

5. The boys were milking the cows.

6. The men were cultivating the land.

7. They were repairing the bridge.

8. When I went there, they were printing the newspaper.

9. When the bell rang, we were answering the questions.

10. The policeman was taking the thief to the police station.

11. When the inspector came, they were questioning the man.

12. They were painting the walls yesterday.

13. They were pulling down the old house when I saw them.

14. They were shipping the goods when it started to rain.

15. Somebody was throwing stones while they were working.

16. Was anybody following you while you were coming here?

17. Were they doing the work when you arrived?

18. They weren't holding up the traffic.

19. Nobody was following the instructions.

20. How were they dyeing the cloth?

21. Where were they taking the cars?

22. They weren't fixing the car when I arrived.

23. Who was selling the tickets?

24. They weren't helping him.

## PASSIVE VOICE (Present Perfect - Past Perfect)

Change the following sentences to passive voice.

Examples: They **have changed** the plan. The plan **has been changed**.

They **had sent** the children home. The children **had been sent** home.

1. He has already answered the questions.

2. She has baked the cake.

3. Somebody has stolen my car.

4. They have just finished the job.

5. They have built a new block of flats.

6. The police have stopped the car.

7. The doctor has just examined the old patient.

8. Somebody has taken our photographs.

9. He has painted that house twice

10. Some people have taken the piano.

11. The student had cleaned the board before the teacher came.

12. They had pulled down a lot of buildings.

13. They had closed the library temporarily.

14. They had put off the meeting before we arrived.

15. Nobody has used this car for two months.

16. Has anybody left any messages for me?

17. Have they surprised you?

18. They haven't started the competition yet.

19. She hasn't planted any flowers in the garden since last year.

20. How long have they held the traffic?

21. He hadn't delivered the letters.

22. Where had they sent him?

23. He has already paid the bill.

24. Had they arrested the thief?

## PASSIVE VOICE (Modals)

THE PASSIVE FORM: *modal + be + past participle*

| ACTIVE MODAL                      | PASSIVE MODAL<br>(MODAL + BE + V3(past participle)) |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Micheal will send the letter.     | The letter will <u>be</u> sent by Micheal           |
| Micheal can send the letter.      | The letter can <u>be</u> sent by Micheal            |
| Micheal should send the letter.   | The letter should <u>be</u> sent by Micheal         |
| Micheal ought to send the letter. | The letter ought to <u>be</u> sent by Micheal       |
| Micheal must send the letter.     | The letter must <u>be</u> sent by Micheal           |
| Micheal has to send the letter.   | The letter has to <u>be</u> sent by Micheal         |
| Micheal may send the letter.      | The letter may <u>be</u> sent by Micheal            |
| Micheal might send the letter.    | The letter might <u>be</u> sent by Micheal          |

Change the following sentences to passive voice.

Examples: You **must** find the bag. *The bag must be found.*  
They **can** build it. *It can be built.*

1. They will sell the flat

2. He is going to publish a new book.

3. They are going to block the road.

4. They may send the parcel tomorrow.

5. We can answer the questions.

6. They must check the passports.

7. They have to sign all the documents.

8. They should serve everybody

9. She might type the report before noon.

10. He had to carry the coal to the fifth floor.

11. You mustn't pay all the money in advance.

12. Nobody can lift that stone.

13. They couldn't open the box.

14. They used to take the children to the park.

15. Can they invite my friend to the party?

16. You needn't water the garden.

---

17. Where can we keep the money?

---

18. Why should they pay the bill in cash?

---

19. What can we do about it?

---

## PASSIVE VOICE (Mix Type) (Active to Passive)

C- Change the following sentences to **passive voice**.

Examples: Everybody **thinks** he is very clever.

They **told** me they would sell the building.

*He is thought to be very clever.*

*I was told the building would be sold.*

1. It was clear that they had searched the house before.

---

2. They say that he is very wise.

---

3. People believe that he has killed his wife.

---

4. If they had told me that before, I wouldn't have disturbed him.

---

5. Don't let people depress you.

---

6. When the police caught the murderer, they sent him to Scotland Yard.

---

7. Everybody thought that the government would cancel the meeting.

---

8. They should have taken security measures beforehand.

---

9. They haven't changed anything since they built this house.

---

10. I don't want anyone to change it.

---

11. Though the police surrounded the house, they couldn't catch all of the criminals.

---

12. Nobody answered the question that the math teacher asked.

---

13. Where did they send the man that they arrested yesterday?

---

14. I don't like people following me.

---

15. He doesn't want people to disturb him.

---

16. They told me that they had arranged everything.

---

17. They surprised everybody when they freed the prisoners.

---

18. We heard the men beating the drums.

---

19. They pointed out that no one could solve the problem unless they knew all the facts.

---

20. Can't we persuade him to help us without telling anybody?

---

21. They will have completed the bridge by the end of next year.

---

22. They shouldn't have sent the parcels without checking.

23. They would have repaired the car if somebody had told them.

24. What will they have to do for it?

## PASSIVE VOICE (Passive to Active)

Change the following sentences to **active voice**.

Examples: The car was painted. (the men)

The newspapers are sold by the newsagent.

The men painted the car.

The newsagent sells the newspapers.

1. The bill has just been paid. (Mr. Smith)

2. The patients are being examined at the moment. (the doctor)

3. Cars mustn't be parked here. (they)

4. Bombs are being dropped by the war planes.

5. The secretary was dismissed by the boss.

6. The work will be finished by 4 o'clock. (she)

7. You are going to be invited to dinner this evening. (he)

8. He never expected his car to be found. (the police)

9. The newspapers are delivered every morning. (Tom)

10. I was given a present. (a friend of mine)

11. This letter has to be written again. (the secretary)

12. The fire had been put out when the fire brigade arrived. (the workers)

13. My baggage is rarely searched at the customs. (the customs officers)

14. This knot can't be untied by anyone.

15. The wires haven't been connected yet. (the men)

16. The museum has just been closed. (the watchman)

17. Was a documentary film being shown when you arrived? (they)

18. Are experiments carried out every day? (the scientists)

19. When was Rome conquered? (Mehmet II)

20. The man should have been arrested. (the police)

21. Where are the files kept? (they)

22. The questions couldn't be answered. (nobody)

23. The car doesn't have to be repaired today. (you)

24. The man is being examined now. (the doctor)

## ACTIVE or PASSIVE?

Complete the following sentences using the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Be careful with the choice of active or passive voice.

Examples: This palace \_\_\_\_ in 1463. (build)

This palace was built in 1463.

Mimar Sinan \_\_\_\_ this mosque. (build)

Mimar Sinan built this mosque.

1. The judge \_\_\_\_ the criminal severely. (punish)

2. The stolen car \_\_\_\_ yet. (not find)

3. The director of the company \_\_\_\_ last night. (arrest)

4. The next meeting \_\_\_\_ on January 25. (hold)

5. The accident \_\_\_\_ at 9.15 last night. (happen)

6. I \_\_\_\_ an electronic watch if I passed my exams. (promise)

7. I \_\_\_\_ to be at the police station at 3 o'clock. (tell)

8. The old man \_\_\_\_ of cancer. (die)

9. A lot of people \_\_\_\_ last night. (kill)

10. The sun \_\_\_\_ in the east every morning. (rise)

11. They \_\_\_\_ the examination next week. (take)

12. The man \_\_\_\_ tomorrow morning. (question)

13. The house \_\_\_\_ now. (clean)

14. He \_\_\_\_ anything for days. (eat)

15. He must never \_\_\_\_ alone. (leave)

16. \_\_\_\_ the car \_\_\_\_ yet? (fix)

17. \_\_\_\_ the thief \_\_\_\_ many things from your flat? (steal)

18. Who \_\_\_\_ the robbers? (catch)

---

19. How many windows \_\_\_ yesterday? (break)

---

20. Who \_\_\_ to prison? (send)

---

## PASSIVE VOICE (Mix Type)

*Change the following sentences to passive voice.*

**Examples:** They installed the telephone. *The telephone was installed.*  
They will write the report. *The report will be written.*

1. My father gave me a pen.

---

2. Somebody showed me the palace.

---

3. They have brought us some flowers.

---

4. Everybody admires his plays.

---

5. They lent me 5000 dollars.

---

6. They have just stopped the car.

---

7. Some people are changing the bed linens.

---

8. Somebody always opens the store at 8.30.

---

9. They were making a film when the earthquake happened.

---

10. The robbers had taken all the money.

---

11. Students shouldn't damage the desks.

---

12. They held the meeting in the library.

---

13. They haven't published my book yet.

---

14. Mehmet II conquered Rome in 1453.

---

15. Are they going to send everybody an invitation card?

---

16. Can anybody solve this problem?

---

17. Somebody is vacuuming the room.

---

18. They couldn't find the burglar.

---

19. How did they put that big cupboard in?

---

20. How many people did the lorry driver injure?

---

21. Somebody robbed the bank.

---

22. When did they discover Australia?

---

---

23. They always disturb him.

---

24. Who is organizing the demonstration?

---

## PASSIVE VOICE (Mix Type)

B- Change the following sentences to passive voice.

Examples: They **rescued** the men.

The men were rescued.

They **will find** a cure for cancer.

A cure for cancer will be found.

1. Somebody has planted some flowers in my garden.

---

2. They sold the house for 100.000 dollars.

---

3. Somebody has robbed me.

---

4. Everybody knows this man very well.

---

5. People will forget it soon.

---

6. Nobody made any mistakes.

---

7. They are taking everything away.

---

8. You must write the report in ink.

---

9. They had already repaired the roof when we arrived.

---

10. The detectives found the bomb.

---

11. They are going to decorate this room next week.

---

12. They give a prize every year.

---

13. They took the injured man to hospital.

---

14. Can they find a cure for this disease?

---

15. They don't speak to strangers in that town.

---

16. They don't expect you to arrive before noon.

---

17. When did they construct that factory?

---

18. What did they show last night?

---

19. Can't they finish the work by five o'clock?

---

20. They haven't fed the animals yet.

---

21. What did they bring yesterday?

---

22. When do they empty the dbins?

---

23. They won't do it till tomorrow.

24. Nobody has done anything.

## PASSIVE VOICE (Mix Type)

*Change the following sentences to active voice.*

You must leave the bathroom tidy. .... The bathroom must be left tidy. ....

1. A dog is chasing the child.

2. A famous designer will redecorate the hotel.

3. A man requested the stranger to leave the meeting.

4. A pickpocket robbed me.

5. A young woman asked the rest of us to be there at eight o'clock.

6. Change these sentences into PASSIVE FORM:

7. Did anyone call an ambulance after the accident?

8. Did the idea interest you?

9. Did they give you a great reception?

10. Doctor Brown will give you some advice.

11. Does listening to music disturb you?

12. Fleming discovered penicillin.

13. His parents have brought him up to be polite.

14. How much do they spend on these activities?

15. I have to return these books to the library.

16. My friend sent me an invitation.

17. Nobody sends her a card at Christmas.

18. Our neighbor ought to paint the garage.

19. People believe that the strike will end soon.

20. People believe that the thieves got through the kitchen window.

21. People believe that they are secret agents.

22. People must obey the law.

23. People say that the company is losing a lot of money.

24. People think that he takes harmful drugs.

25. Picasso painted that picture.

26. Some trees have been planted by the gardener..

---

27. Someone had broken our door down.

---

28. Someone has already paid the electrician for his work.

---

29. Someone has broken the crystal vase.

---

30. Someone is helping her with the housework.

---

31. Someone is remaking that film.

---

32. Someone will pay you in ten days.

---

33. Steven Spielberg directed "E.T."

---

34. The author has written a special edition for children.

---

35. The burglars had cut a huge hole in the steel door.

---

36. The cleaner is going to mop the kitchen floor.

---

37. The farmer is building a new barn.

---

38. The gardener has planted some trees.

---

39. The mail-order company sent Mrs. Green a parcel.

---

40. The organizers will exhibit the paintings till the end of the month.

---

41. The secretary has given Mrs. Jones some letters.

---

42. The traffic warden had already given him a ticket for illegal parking.

---

43. They broke a lot of plates while they were dancing?

---

44. They chose him as the best actor of the year.

---

45. They had eaten all the dinner before they finished the conversation.

---

46. They taught him French and gave him a dictionary.

---

47. When did they ring the church bells?

---

48. When is he going to pay the taxes?

---

49. When we first met, they had already offered me a job at the bank.

---

50. Who has designed these buildings?

---

51. Who invented the electric bulb?

---

52. Who wrote it?

---

53. Why didn't they mend the roof before it fell in?

---

54. Will you pay the fine?

---

55. You can improve your health with more exercise.

56. You must dry-clean this shirt.

## PASSIVE VOICE (...used for... / ...made in – of - from...)

*Answer the questions.*

1. What is your schoolbag made of?

---

2. Where is your pencil made in?

---

3. What is a hole-punch made of?

---

4. Is a hammer made of glass?

---

5. What is a toothbrush used for?

---

6. What is a comb used for?

---

7. What is a knife made of?

---

8. Is paper made from wood or stone?

---

9. What is a compass made of?

---

10. What is a watch used for?

---

11. What is a calendar used for?

---

12. What is a ruler made of?

---

13. What is a lawn mover used for?

---

14. Where is your watch made in?

---

15. What is a fork used for?

---

# PASSIVE VOICE - WHO?

Passive voice with WHO...? questions.

*Answer the questions.*

1. Who was "The Green Mile" written by?

2. Who was the light bulb invented by?

3. Who were you named by?

4. Who was Istanbul conquered by?

5. Who was the Turkish Republic founded by?

6. Who was the modern system of nursing founded by?

7. Who are you given your pocket money by?

8. Who are you taught English by?

9. Who were you given this present by?

10. Who are the poor in your country helped by?

11. Who are you helped with your English homework by?

12. Who was America discovered by?

13. Who was the radio invented by?

14. Who was the first transplant operation performed by?

# PASSIVE VOICE (Who?)

*Answer the questions in passive voice.*

1. Who invited you to the party? (your best friend)

2. Who invented the telescope?

3. Who gave you these stamps? (your nephew)

4. Who has drunk the milk? (your brother)

5. Who is going to build a house by the sea? (your uncle)

6. Who made this cake? (your aunt)

7. Who is typing the letters? (secretary)

8. Who delivers the letters?

# INDIRECT OBJECTS

## VERBS WITH TWO OBJECTS

|   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) I wrote <u>a letter</u>   <u>to Alex.</u><br>direct object INDIRECT object  | Some verbs are followed by two objects: a direct object and an indirect object.<br>(a) and (b) have the same meaning.<br>The preposition <b>to</b> is NOT used when the indirect object is first and the direct object is second. |
| (a) I wrote <u>Alex</u>   <u>a letter.</u><br>INDIRECT object direct object   |   |
| (c) INCORRECT: <i>I wrote to Alex a letter.</i>   |   |
| (d) DIRECT OBJECT<br>What did you write? → A letter.  | A direct object answers the question <i>What?</i>   |
| (e) INDIRECT OBJECT<br>Who(m) did you write a letter to? → Alex.<br>(f) —Did you write these letters to Alex?<br>—Yes, I did. I wrote <b>them to him</b> .<br>(g) INCORRECT: <i>I wrote him them.</i> | An indirect object answers the question <i>Who(m)?</i><br>When the direct object is a pronoun (e.g., <i>them</i> ), it must precede the indirect object, as in (f).   |
| VERBS FOLLOWED BY INDIRECT OBJECTS INTRODUCED BY <b>TO</b><br><i>give</i> <i>send</i><br><i>hand</i> <i>show</i><br><i>lend</i> <i>tell</i><br><i>pass</i> <i>write</i>                               | Rewrite the following sentences changing the positions of the direct and indirect objects.  |

following sentences changing the positions of the direct and indirect objects.

Example: I gave him a book.      I gave a book to him.  
She told a story to her son.      She told her son a story.

1. I showed him his room.

2. She read me the report.

3. They sent the books to us.

4. I brought him the cassette.

5. She told me the news.

6. My father gave a lot of money to me.

7. He wrote a letter to me.

8. He sold his house to me.

9. He taught me English.

10. He lent me some money.

11. I owe you 1000 dollars.

---

13. Don't tell him your name.

---

14. Don't bring anything to me.

---

15. Take these flowers to your father.

---

16. Write your parents a letter.

---

17. Send me a postcard.

---

18. Don't show these pictures to anybody.

---

19. I bought a dictionary for my brother.

---

20. They found me a flat.

---

21. She mailed me a parcel.

---

22. I am going to bake a cake for you.

---

23. I offered him a good job.

---

# RELATIVE CLAUSES

## USING SUBJECT PRONOUNS: WHO, WHICH, THAT

|  |  |
|--|--|
| I thanked the woman. <b>She</b> helped me  | In (a): <i>I thanked the woman</i> = an independent clause<br><i>who helped me</i> = an adjective clause<br>The adjective clause modifies the noun <i>woman</i> .  |
| (a) I thanked the woman <b>who</b> helped me.<br>(b) I thanked the woman <b>that</b> helped me.  |  |
| The book is mine. <b>It</b> is on the table.<br>(c) The book <b>which</b> is on the table is mine.<br>(d) The book <b>that</b> is on the table is mine | In (a): <b>who</b> is the subject of the adjective clause.<br>In (b): <b>that</b> is the subject of the adjective clause.<br>Note: (a) and (b) have the same meaning<br><br><b>who</b> = used for people<br><b>which</b> = used for things<br><b>that</b> = used for both people and things. |

## USING OBJECT PRONOUNS: WHO(M), WHICH, THAT

|  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. PRONOUN USED AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB                    | Notice in the examples: The adjective clause pronouns are placed at the <i>beginning</i> of the clause.<br>(General guideline: Place an adjective clause pronoun as close as possible to the noun it modifies.) |
| The man was Mr. Jones. I saw <b>him</b> .                  |   |
| The man <b>who(m)</b> I saw was Mr.; Jones.                | In (e): <b>who</b> is usually used instead of <b>whom</b> especially in speaking. <b>Whom</b> is generally used only in very formal English.  |
| The man <b>that</b> I saw was Mr. Jones.                   |   |
| The man <b>Ø</b> I saw was Mr. Jones.                      | In (g) and (j): An object pronoun is often omitted from an adjective clause. (A subject pronoun, however, may not be omitted.)  |
| The movie wasn't very good. We saw <b>it</b> last night.   | <b>who(m)</b> = used for people<br><b>which</b> = used for things<br><b>that</b> = used for both people and things  |
| The movie <b>which</b> we saw last night wasn't very good. |   |
| The movie <b>that</b> we saw last night wasn't very good.  |   |
| The movie <b>Ø</b> we saw last night wasn't very good.     |   |

## PRONOUN USED AS THE OBJECT OF A PREPOSITION

|  |   |
|--|---|
| She is the woman.<br>I told you <b>about her</b> .   | In very formal English, the preposition comes at the beginning of the adjective clause, as in (k) and (o). Usually, however, in everyday usage, the preposition comes after the subject and verb of the adjective clause, as in the other examples. |
| (k) She is the woman <b>about whom</b> I told you.<br>(l) She is the woman <b>who(m)</b> I told you <b>about</b> .<br>(m) She is the woman <b>that</b> I told you <b>about</b> .<br>(n) She is the woman <b>Ø</b> I told you <b>about</b> .  |   |
| The music was good.<br>We listened <b>to it</b> last night.  |   |
| (o) The music <b>to which</b> we listened last night was good.<br>(p) The music <b>which</b> we listened <b>to</b> last night was good.<br>(q) The music <b>that</b> we listened <b>to</b> last night was good.<br>(r) The music <b>Ø</b> we listened <b>to</b> last night was good. |   |
|  | Note: If the preposition comes at the beginning of the adjective clause, only <b>whom</b> or <b>which</b> may be used. A preposition is never immediately followed by <b>that</b> or <b>who</b> .   |

## USING WHOSE

|   |   |
|---|---|
| I know the man.<br><b>His bicycle</b> was stolen.<br>(s) I know the man <b>whose bicycle</b> was stolen.                    | <b>Whose</b> is used to show possession. It carries the same meaning as other possessive pronouns used as adjectives: <i>his</i> , <i>her</i> , <i>its</i> , and <i>their</i> . Like <i>his</i> , <i>her</i> , <i>its</i> , and <i>their</i> , <b>whose</b> is connected to a noun:<br><br><i>his bicycle</i> → <b>whose bicycle</b><br><i>her composition</i> → <b>whose composition</b> |
| The student writes well.<br>I read <b>her composition</b> .<br>(t) The student <b>whose composition</b> I read writes well. | Both <b>whose</b> and the noun it is connected to are placed at the beginning of the adjective clause. <b>Whose</b> cannot be omitted.  |
| Mr. Catt has a painting. <b>Its value</b> is inestimable.<br>(u) Mr. Catt has a painting <b>whose value</b> is inestimable. | <b>Whose</b> usually modifies “people”, but may also be used to modify “things”, as in (u).   |

## USING WHERE

|   |   |
|---|---|
| The building is very old.<br>He lives <b>there</b> ( <b>in that building</b> .)   | <b>Where</b> is used in an adjective clause to modify a place ( <i>city</i> , <i>country</i> , <i>room</i> , <i>house</i> , etc.). If <b>where</b> is used, a preposition is not included in the adjective clause. If <b>where</b> is not used, the preposition must be included. |
| (a) The building <b>where</b> he lives is very old.<br>(b) The building <b>in which</b> he lives is very old.<br>The building <b>which</b> he lives <b>in</b> is very old.<br>The building <b>that</b> he lives <b>in</b> is very old.<br>The building <b>Ø</b> he lives <b>in</b> is very old. |   |
|   |   |

## USING WHEN

|   |   |
|---|---|
| I'll never forget the day<br>I met you <b>then</b> ( <b>on that day</b> ).  | <b>When</b> is used in an adjective clause to modify a noun of time ( <i>year</i> , <i>day</i> , <i>time</i> , <i>century</i> , etc.) The use of a preposition in an adjective clause that modifies a noun of time is somewhat different from that in other adjective clauses: A preposition is used preceding <b>which</b> , as in (d). Otherwise, the preposition is omitted. |
| (c) I'll never forget the day <b>when</b> I met you.<br>(d) I'll never forget the day <b>on which</b> I met you.<br>(e) I'll never forget the day <b>that</b> I met you.<br>(f) I'll never forget the day <b>Ø</b> I met you. |   |
|   |   |

# PUNCTUATION OF ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

|  |   |
|--|---|
| General guidelines for the punctuation of adjective clauses:<br>(1) DO NOT USE COMMAS IF the adjective clause is necessary to identify the noun it modifies.*<br>(2) USE COMMAS IF the adjective clause simply gives additional information and is not necessary to identify the noun it modifies.** |   |
| (a) <i>The professor who teaches Chemistry 101</i> is an excellent lecturer.   | In (a): No commas are used. The adjective clause is necessary to identify which professor is meant.   |
| (b) <i>Professor Wilson, who teaches Chemistry 101</i> , is an excellent lecturer.   | In (b): Commas are used. The adjective clause is not necessary to identify who Professor Wilson is. We already know who he is: he has a name. The adjective clause simply gives additional formation.   |
| (c) <i>Hawaii</i> , which consists of eight principal islands, is a favorite vacation spot.  | Guideline: Use commas, as in (b), (c), and (d), if an adjective clause modifies a proper noun. (A proper noun begins with a capital letter, not a small letter.) Note: A comma reflects a pause in speech.  |
| (d) <i>Mrs. Smith</i> , who is a retired teacher, does volunteer work at the hospital.   |   |
| (e) <i>The man who(m) / that / Ø I met</i> teaches chemistry.<br>(f) <i>Mr. Lee, whom I met yesterday</i> , teaches chemistry.   | In (e): If no commas are used, any possible pronoun may be used in the adjective clause. Object pronouns may be omitted.<br>In (f): When commas are necessary, the pronoun <i>that</i> may not be used (only <i>who</i> , <i>whom</i> , <i>which</i> , <i>whose</i> , <i>where</i> , and <i>when</i> may be used), and object pronouns cannot be omitted. |
| COMPARE THE MEANING  |   |
| (g) We took some children on a picnic. <i>The children, who wanted to play soccer</i> , ran to an open field as soon as we arrived at the park.  | In (g): The use of commas means that <i>all</i> of children wanted to play soccer and all of the children ran to an open field. The adjective clause is used only to give additional information about the children.  |
| (h) We took some children on a picnic. <i>The children who wanted to play soccer</i> ran to an open field as soon as we arrived at the park. The others played a different game.   | In (h): The lack of commas means that <i>only some</i> of the children wanted to play soccer. The adjective clause is used to identify which children to the open field.  |

## USING EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY IN ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

|   |  |
|---|--|
| In my class there are 20 students.<br><i>Most of them</i> are from the Far East.  | An adjective clause may contain an expression of quantity with <i>of</i> : <i>some of</i> , <i>many of</i> , <i>most of</i> , <i>none of</i> , <i>two of</i> , <i>half of</i> , <i>both of</i> , <i>neither of</i> , <i>each of</i> , <i>all of</i> , <i>several of</i> , <i>a few of</i> , <i>little of</i> , <i>a number of</i> , etc. |
| (a) In my class there are 20 students, <i>most of whom</i> are from the Far East.<br><br>He gave several reasons.<br><i>Only a few of them</i> were valid.  | The expression of quantity precedes the pronoun. Only <i>whom</i> , <i>which</i> , and <i>whose</i> are used in this pattern.  |
| (b) He gave several reasons, <i>only a few of which</i> were valid.<br><br>The teachers discussed Jim.<br><i>One of his problems</i> was poor study habits. | Adjective clauses that begin with an expression of quantity are more common in writing than speaking. Commas are used.   |
| (c) The teachers discussed Jim, <i>one of whose problems</i> was poor study habits.   |  |

## USING WHICH TO MODIFY A WHOLE SENTENCE

|  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) Tom was late. (b) <i>That</i> surprised me.<br>(c) Tom was late, <i>which surprised me</i> .<br><br>(d) The elevator is out of order. (e) <i>This</i> is too bad.<br>(f) The elevator is out of order, <i>which is too bad</i> . | The pronouns <i>that</i> and <i>this</i> can refer to the idea of a whole sentence which comes before. In (b): The word <i>that</i> refers to the whole sentence “ <i>Tom was late</i> .” Similarly, an adjective clause with <i>which</i> may modify the idea of a whole sentence. In (c): The word <i>which</i> refers to the whole sentence “ <i>Tom was late</i> .”* |
|--|--|

## REDUCTION OF ADJECTIVE CLAUSES TO ADJECTIVE PHRASES: INTRODUCTION

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Terms: <b>clause</b> : A clause is a group of related words that contains a subject and a verb.<br><b>phrase</b> : A phrase is a group of related words that does not contain a subject and a verb.  |  |
| (a) ADJECTIVE CLAUSE:<br>The girl <i>who is sitting next to me</i> is Mary.<br>(b) ADJECTIVE PHRASE:<br>The girl <i>sitting next to me</i> is Mary.  | An adjective phrase is a reduction of an adjective clause. It modifies a noun. It does not contain a subject and a verb. The adjective clause in (a) can be reduced to the adjective phrase in (b). (a) and (b) have the same meaning. |
| (c) CLAUSE: The boy <i>who is playing the piano</i> is Ben.<br>(d) PHRASE: The boy <i>playing the piano</i> is Ben.<br>(e) CLAUSE: The boy <i>(whom) I saw</i> was Tom.<br>(f) PHRASE: <i>(none)</i> | Only adjective clauses that have a subject pronoun— <i>who</i> , <i>which</i> , or <i>that</i> —are reduced to modifying adjective phrases. The adjective clause in (e) cannot be reduced to an adjective phrase.                      |

## CHANGING AN ADJECTIVE CLAUSE TO AN ADJECTIVE PHRASE

|   |   |
|---|---|
| There are two ways in which an adjective clause is changed to an adjective phrase:  |   |
| (1) The subject pronoun is omitted AND the <i>be</i> form of the verb is omitted.   |   |
| (a) CLAUSE: The man <i>who is talking</i> to John is from Korea.<br>PHRASE: The man <i>Ø Ø talking</i> to John is from Korea.   |   |
| (b) CLAUSE: The ideas <i>which are presented</i> in that book are interesting.<br>PHRASE: The ideas <i>Ø Ø presented</i> in that book are interesting.  |   |
| (c) CLAUSE: Ann is the woman <i>who is responsible</i> for preparing the budget.<br>PHRASE: Ann is the woman <i>Ø Ø responsible</i> for preparing the budget.   |   |
| (d) CLAUSE: The books <i>that are on that shelf</i> are mine.<br>PHRASE: The books <i>Ø Ø on that shelf</i> are mine.   |   |
| (2) If there is no <i>be</i> form of a verb in the adjective clause, it is sometimes possible to omit the subject pronoun and change the verb to its <i>-ing</i> form.  |   |
| (e) CLAUSE: English has an alphabet <i>that consists</i> of 26 letters. (d) CLAUSE: Anyone <i>who wants</i> to come with us is welcome.<br>PHRASE: English has an alphabet <i>Ø consisting</i> of 26 letters. PHRASE: Anyone <i>Ø wanting</i> to come with us is welcome. |   |
| (g) <i>George Washington, who was the first president of the United States</i> , was a wealthy colonist and a general in the army.  | If the adjective clause requires commas, as in (g), the adjective phrase also requires commas, as in (h). |
| (h) <i>George Washington, the first president of the United States</i> , was a wealthy colonist and a general in the army.  |   |

# RELATIVE CLAUSE (Who)

Answer the questions as in the example.

**Examples:** What do we call a person who cuts hair?

A person who cuts hair is called a barber.

What do we call a person who plays football?

A person who plays football is called a footballer.

What do we call a person **who**...

1. What do we call a person **who** types letters?

---

2. What do we call a person **who** sells newspapers and magazines?

---

3. What do we call a person **who** cooks meals?

---

4. What do we call a person **who** makes clothes?

---

5. What do we call a person **who** sells fruit and vegetables?

---

6. What do we call a person **who** runs in races?

---

7. What do we call a person **who** acts in films?

---

8. What do we call a person **who** steals things?

---

9. What do we call a person **who** serves food at the tables in a restaurant?

---

10. What do we call a person **who** takes pictures?

---

11. What do we call a person **who** drives a taxi?

---

12. What do we call a person **who** catches criminals?

---

13. What do we call a person **who** puts out fires?

---

14. What do we call a person **who** pull's out teeth?

---

15. What do we call a person **who** examines patients?

---

16. What do we call a person **who** looks after sick or old people?

---

17. What do we call a person **who** fixes cars?

---

18. What do we call a person **who** rides in horse races?

---

19. What do we call a person **who** flies planes?

---

20. What do we call a person **who** writes poems?

---

21. What do we call a person **who** teaches English?

---

22. What do we call a person **who** interviews people?

---

23. What do we call a person **who** tells lies?

---

24. What do we call a person **who** writes books?

---

# RELATIVE CLAUSES (Who, Which)

Put in WHO / WHICH

**Example:** I met a woman .....**who**..... can speak six languages.

1. A coffee-maker is a machine \_\_\_\_ makes coffee.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Do you know anybody \_\_\_\_ want to buy a car?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Everybody \_\_\_\_ went to the party enjoyed it very much.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I have a friend \_\_\_\_ is very good at repairing cars.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. She always asks me question \_\_\_\_ are difficult to answer.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What's the name of the man \_\_\_\_ lives next door?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. What's the name of the river \_\_\_\_ goes through the town?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Where is the picture \_\_\_\_ was on the wall?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Why does he always wear clothes \_\_\_\_ are too small for him?  
\_\_\_\_\_

# RELATIVE CLAUSE (Who-Where, Which)

**Answer the questions using relative pronouns.**

**Examples:** What is a classroom?

a room in a school or college **where** groups of students are taught

1. What is a barber?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What is a bathroom?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What is a bird?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What is a bookworm?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What is a briefcase?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What is a butcher?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. What is a chatterbox?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. What is a classroom?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. What is a cupboard?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. What is a driver?  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. What is a dustbin?  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. What is a duster?  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. What is a fireman?  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. What is a florist?  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. What is a glass?  
\_\_\_\_\_

16. What is a horse?

17. What is a housebreaker?

18. What is a kitchen?

19. What is a library?

20. What is a lift?

21. What is a milkman?

22. What is a nurse?

23. What is a parrot?

24. What is a pilot?

25. What is a porter?

26. What is a prison?

27. What is a professor?

28. What is a restaurant?

29. What is a rose?

30. What is a schoolbag?

31. What is a screwdriver?

32. What is a shoplifter?

33. What is a spoon?

34. What is a stationer's?

35. What is a teacher?

36. What is a telephone?

37. What is a thermometer?

38. What is a typist?

39. What is a vegetarian?

40. What is a wardrobe?

41. What is a wardrobe?

42. What is an air-condition?

# RELATIVE CLAUSE (Who, Which)

Combine the following sentences using **who**, **which**, or **that**.

**Example:** The woman is Mary's mother. She opened the door.

The woman who opened the door is Mary's mother.

The dog belongs to Mr. Smith. It is barking.

The dog which is barking belongs to Mr. Smith.

1. The boss was angry with the typist. She made a lot of mistakes.

---

2. The man had killed three people. He escaped from prison.

---

3. The car was very fast. It hit the tree.

---

4. The child started to cry. He fell off the tree.

---

5. The plane is an hour late. It is coming from Berlin.

---

6. The woman is knitting a sweater. She is waiting for the doctor.

---

7. The man is very happy. He has won the election.

---

8. The boy worked very hard. He won the prize.

---

9. The man smokes a lot. He is coughing now.

---

10. The cat is sleeping. It caught a mouse half an hour ago.

---

11. The company went bankrupt. It couldn't sell its products.

---

12. I don't like people. They tell lies.

---

13. The judge punished the man. The man had robbed the bank.

---

14. The man was driving very fast. He had an accident.

---

15. The girl studies a lot. She gets good marks in the exams.

---

16. Where did the man go? He was wearing a strange hat.

---

17. How is the woman? She had an operation last week.

---

18. The man broke his leg. Send him to hospital.

---

19. The child was very ill. What happened to him?

---

20. The car broke down. The driver is trying to repair it.

---

21. The dog ran away. It bit my leg.

---

22. The man went to the police station. He had lost his passport.

---

23. I am looking for the man. He lives next to us.

---

# RELATIVE CLAUSES (Whose)

Combine the following sentences using **whose** or **with**.

**Examples:**

- a) Do you know the boy? **His** mother died yesterday.  
Do you know the boy **whose** mother died yesterday.
- b) I like the dictionary very much. **Its** definitions are clear.  
I like the dictionary **whose** definitions are clear very much.

1. The woman is crying. Her son is going to America.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The man is talking to the headmaster. His son failed.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I am going to visit the man. His wife died last week.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Bring me the book. Its pictures are black and white.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. This is the man. His car is very fast.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The man phoned the police. His house was broken into.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The house is about to collapse. Its walls are cracked.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The woman is screaming. Her jewels were stolen.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. The boy is crying. His ball went up to the roof.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. I lost the tape recorder. Its loud-speakers were detachable.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. That is the woman. We met her son last night.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. The castle is impossible to enter. Its walls are very high.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. The dog bit the boy. Somebody broke its chain.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. I like books. Their pictures are colorful.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. The baby is smiling. Its nappy has been changed.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. There is the man. We are going to buy his house.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. The man called the fire brigade. His house was arsoned.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. Repair the car. Its battery is flat.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. Do you know the professor? We are going to attend his lectures.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. They took the child to hospital. A dog had bit his leg.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. The girl is smiling. The photographer is taking her picture.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. The man left the town. Uncle Tom bought his car.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. The woman is talking to the headmaster. Her daughter is ill.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. The woman is cooking dinner. Her children are watching TV in the living-room.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# RELATIVE CLAUSES (Mix Type)

Combine the following sentences using relative pronouns.

Omit relative pronouns where possible.

Example: The man was very frightened. We saw him at the bus stop.

*The man (who) we saw at the bus stop was very frightened.*

The man abandoned his family. He had lost his job.

*The man who had lost his job abandoned his family.*

I can't find the pen. I started writing the letter with it.

*I can't find the pen (which) I started writing the letter with.*

The boy left his house. His father had punished him.

*The boy whose father had punished him left his house.*

1. That's the girl. She spoke to me yesterday.

2. What's the name of the book? You want me to read it.

3. We stayed in a hotel. The hotel was very expensive.

4. I rent a house. It is very small.

5. The car was stolen. It was a BMW.

6. The man smoked forty cigarettes a day. He died of a heart attack.

7. That's the building. I work there.

8. That's the boy. His mother works in the post office.

9. The businessman was very rich. I saw him last night.

10. That's the dog. Its owner is French.

11. The book was valuable. I found it in the basement.

12. The truck ran over the little girl. It was coming very fast.

13. The children are making a lot of noise. They are playing in the garden.

14. The plane crashed. It left the airport at 9.30.

15. The man was doing 120 kph. The policeman stopped him.

16. The mountain is very steep. The climbers are trying to climb it up.

17. The people have just arrived. You invited them to dinner.

18. The plumber charged 10 dollars. He fixed the boiler.

19. The program is very interesting. I am listening to it now.

20. The man was very angry. The government confiscated his land.

21. The cars are very nice. They produce them in Turkey.

22. They have employed a cook. He cooks very well.

23. The woman wants to talk to you. You dismissed her son yesterday.

24. The lion is very dangerous. It escaped from the zoo.

25. The space shuttle will return to earth next year. It will take photographs of Mars.

26. The man is very good at his job. He repairs my car.

27. The boys are very active. They live upstairs.

28. The man wanted to commit suicide. He couldn't pay his debts.

29. I couldn't find the pen. I had put it on the shelf.

30. I have received a letter from China. Can you translate it?

31. The man is coming towards you. You mustn't talk to him.

35. The birds sing in her garden. She always feed them.

36. The man rushed into the manager's office. The salesman overcharged him.

37. You were wearing a hat yesterday. How much did you pay for it?

38. The boy broke his left arm. He was riding his bicycle very dangerously.

39. The student never does homework. The teacher wants to talk to his father.

40. The submarine almost sank. It hit a huge iceberg.

41. The mother put the toys away. The children left them around.

42. The doctors didn't operate on the patient. He had a high temperature.

43. The guards discovered the tunnel. The prisoners dug it in twenty days.

44. The athlete won the gold medal. He ran 100 meters in 10 seconds.

45. The eye-witness didn't appear in court. Everybody was waiting for her.

46. The workers went on strike. The employer didn't accept their demands.

47. The painting disappeared mysteriously. It was in the art gallery.

48. I started to work in the factory. My father used to work there.

49. The man had to walk two kilometers. His car broke down.

50. The examination is very important for me. I will take it next week.

51. The man is disturbing everybody. Take him away.

52. The man works 60 hours a week. How much does he earn?

53. The students can't understand the words. You should explain them.

54. The driver is repairing the car. We traveled in that car yesterday.

55. I don't like the man. I work with him in the same office.

56. The secretary finished typing the letters. Send them to Mr. Smith.

57. I want to go to the restaurant. They serve fresh food there.

58. I apologized to the man. I stepped on his foot.

# RELATIVE CLAUSES (Mix Type)

1. The man left the country. The police were trying to catch him.

---

2. I can't find the parcel. I had put it under the table.

---

3. The flowers were very nice. My friends brought them to me.

---

4. I have lost the dictionary. I bought it yesterday.

---

5. The boy left his homework at home. I studied with him last night.

---

6. The advertisement was very interesting. We saw it in the paper.

---

7. The pill was no good. The doctor prescribed it.

---

8. My father bought me the bicycle. He had promised to buy it.

---

9. The students were very successful in the exam. Mr. Miller taught them.

---

10. He showed me a book. I liked it very much.

---

11. The poem made everybody cry. Ali recited it.

---

12. I sent the newspaper a story. They didn't publish it.

---

13. I lent Chuck some money. He didn't repay it.

---

14. The cake was very delicious. My mother made it.

---

15. Mr. Brown sold the house. He had built it in two years.

---

16. I am reading a book. It is very boring.

---

17. How is the woman? She had an operation last week.

---

18. My father was reading a newspaper. Where did you put it?

---

19. They are going to give you a letter. Read it very carefully.

---

20. The teacher asked me a question. I didn't understand it.

---

21. I couldn't find the letter. The postman had brought it yesterday.

---

22. The man is fixing the window. My son has broken it.

---

23. I gave you a letter. Why didn't you take it to your father?

---

24. They put the man in prison. They had arrested him two days ago.

---

# RELATIVE CLAUSES

Read the following passages and answer the questions.

(You have to use **RELATIVE CLAUSES**- **who, whom, which, that, whose, or where** in your answers.)

A- While Mary was playing in the street, she saw a dog. It was walking very slowly. She threw a big stone at the dog and it ran away. Then she saw another dog. This one was running very fast. When the dog saw Mary, it started to run towards her and bit her left leg. Her mother was at the window and saw her. She rushed out and took a taxi to take Mary to hospital. The driver of the taxi was driving very slowly. She got very angry and told the driver to drive fast. But it was an old car and it didn't go fast. So they got out of the taxi and took another one. This one was new and fast. There were two hospitals in the town. One of them was very near but they didn't go there. They went to the other hospital. Mary had had an operation there two years ago.

1. Which dog bit Mary's left leg?

---

2. Which dog was walking very slowly?

---

3. Which taxi didn't Mary's mother like?

---

4. Which taxi did they take later?

---

5. Which hospital did they go to?

B- Yesterday I left home at 8 o'clock. I went to the bus-stop and started to wait for a bus. A bus came at 8.15. I tried to get on it but it was impossible. Five minutes later another bus came. This time I was able to get on. I saw an old friend on the bus. He was wearing a blue shirt. We started to talk. While we were talking, the bus broke down. My friend got off immediately. After waiting for a few minutes, I decided to get off, too. Just as I was getting off, I saw another friend. I taught him English two years ago. We got on another bus at 8.40. The driver of this bus was driving very fast. I got to work at 8.55.

1. Which bus couldn't the writer take?

---

2. Which bus did he take?

---

3. Which friend did he meet on the bus?

---

4. Which friend did he meet while he was getting off?

---

5. Which bus did they take at 8.40?

# REPORTED SPEECH

## REPORTED SPEECH AND THE FORMAL SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN NOUN CLAUSES

FORMAL: If the main verb of the sentence is in the past (e.g., *said*), the verb in the noun clause is usually also in a past form.\* Notice the verb form changes in the examples below.

### QUOTED SPEECH

- (a) He said, "I **work** hard." → He said (that) he **worked** hard.
- (b) He said, "I **am working** hard." → He said (that) he **was working** hard.
- (c) He said, "I **have worked** hard." → He said (that) he **had worked** hard.
- (d) He said, "I **worked** hard." → He said (that) he **had worked** hard.
- (e) He said, "I **am going to work** hard." → He said (that) he **was going to work** hard.
- (f) He said, "I **will work** hard." → He said (that) he **would work** hard.
- (g) He said, "I **can work** hard." → He said (that) he **could work** hard.
- (h) He said, "I **may work** hard." → He said (that) he **might work** hard.
- (i) He said, "I **have to work** hard." → He said (that) he **had to work** hard.
- (j) He said, "I **must work** hard." → He said (that) he **had to work** hard.
- (k) He said, "I **should work** hard." → He said (that) he **should work** hard. (no change)
- (l) He said, "I **ought to work** hard." → He said (that) he **ought to work** hard. (no change)

### REPORTED SPEECH

INFORMAL: Sometimes, especially in speaking, the verb in the noun clause is not changed if the speaker is reporting something *immediately* or *soon after* it was said.

- (m) Immediate reporting: A: What did Ann just say? I didn't hear her.  
B: She **said** (that) she **is** hungry.
- (n) Later reporting: A: What did Ann say when she got home last night?  
B: She **said** (that) she **was** hungry.

\*If the main verb of the sentence is in the present (e.g., *says*), no change is made in the verb tense or modal in the noun clause.

- He says, "I **work** hard." → He says (that) he **works** hard.
- He says, "I'm **working** hard." → He says (that) he's **working** hard.
- He says, "I **worked** hard." → He says (that) he **worked** hard.
- He says, "I **will work** hard." → He says (that) he **will work** hard.

# REPORTED SPEECH (To be Present – Present Progressive)

Put the following sentences into **reported speech**. Start with the third person singular and with a past tense.

**Examples:** I am very ill. He said he was very ill.  
I am studying English. She said she was studying English.

1. I am a student.  
She \_\_\_\_\_
2. I am twelve years old.  
The boy \_\_\_\_\_
3. My father is a computer programmer.  
The girl \_\_\_\_\_
4. We are from Kenya.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. My sister is very fat.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Mathematics is very difficult.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. My mother is in the kitchen now.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I am writing a letter now.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. My father is reading the newspaper.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. My mother is cooking.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. My sister is having a cup of tea.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. My brother is doing a crossword puzzle.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. The students are wrestling.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. I am doing homework.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. We are having dinner.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Ayse is getting ready for school.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. We are very late.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. The dog is barking.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. I am very tired.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. My brother is a pilot.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. We are tourists.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. I am not in a hurry.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. I am cleaning my car.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. We are watching TV.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# REPORTED SPEECH (Present Perfect – Simple Past)

Put the following sentences into reported speech. Start with a verb in the past.

**Examples:** I have just had lunch. He said he had just had lunch.  
I didn't talk to him. She said she hadn't talked to him.

1. I met an old friend of mine this morning.

2. I took my car to the garage.

3. We went to Canada last year.

4. I apologized to the teacher for being late.

5. My father stopped working three years ago.

6. The driver braked just in time.

7. I have just called my father.

8. We have been to Germany before.

9. I have polished my shoes.

10. I have never played golf.

11. My brother has already watered the garden.

12. The teacher has given some more homework.

13. Our team beat your team yesterday.

14. Somebody hit my car.

15. I haven't seen your parents recently.

16. I sent the invitations yesterday.

17. I have been to Japan several times.

18. We haven't moved to our new house yet.

19. I didn't watch TV last night.

20. My mother didn't wake me up on time this morning.

21. The bell has just rung.

22. I didn't go there with him.

23. We sold our house.

24. We have already started work.

# REPORTED SPEECH (Modals – Future)

Put the following sentences into reported speech. Start with a verb in the past.

Examples: I may exercise today. He told me he might exercise that day.  
I have to wait for my brother. She told me she had to wait for her brother.

1. I have to take an exam today.

2. My brother can speak English.

3. I am going to have a bath in the afternoon.

4. We have to wait for the manager.

5. They may come this evening.

6. Ali will call you later.

7. We'll have to go there again tomorrow.

8. I'll be able to help you tomorrow.

9. We can play table tennis very well.

10. You may pass your exam if you study.

11. You must find some money.

12. We are going to have dinner at a restaurant.

13. I have to do my homework.

14. I can use a computer.

15. I won't be able to go to work tomorrow.

16. You don't have to pay money in advance.

17. I am not going to stay up late tonight.

18. You'll never see me again.

19. I can't play chess.

20. You won't have to go to the passport office.

21. I must phone my father.

22. I am not going to disturb you again.

23. I'll do the shopping.

24. They won't sell their house.

# REPORTED SPEECH (Imperatives)

Change the following sentences to reported speech.

Examples: Open the window. He told me to open the window.  
Don't make noise. She told us not to make any noise.

1. Give me a pen.

2. Turn off the lights.

3. Wash your hands.

4. Answer the phone.

5. Clean the board.

6. Try to come early.

7. Go to sleep.

8. Don't talk so loudly.

9. Don't smoke here.

10. Don't step on my foot.

11. Don't watch TV every evening.

12. Don't leave it on the desk.

13. Don't run in the classroom.

14. Don't put out your tongue.

15. Stop crying.

16. Do your homework carefully.

17. Don't drink cold water.

18. Please help me.

19. Don't disturb us.

20. Sign the documents.

21. Read something every day.

22. Don't run so fast.

23. Don't move.

24. Put your books in your bag.

# REPORTED SPEECH (Simple Present)

Put the following sentences into reported speech. Start with a verb in the past.

**Example:** I never drink coffee. He said he never drank coffee.  
I don't like films. She said she didn't like films.

1. I live in a large house.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I work in a drugstore.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. My father speaks three languages.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I like studying languages.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. I need a pen.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. My mother cooks very well.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. We have dinner at 8 o'clock.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I want to be a teacher.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. I want to talk to you.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. My sister helps my mother every day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. I buy a newspaper every day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. I drink milk every morning.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. We usually watch TV in the evening.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. I don't like swimming.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. We don't sleep during the day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Ali doesn't speak French.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. Mary doesn't understand Turkish.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. I see your brother every day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. I don't want to see you again.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. I go to the library after school.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. I sleep seven hours a day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. We don't have lunch at home.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. I never drive to work.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. My brother works at night.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# REPORTED SPEECH (Mix Tenses)

Put the following sentences into reported speech. Start the sentence with a present (or future) tense and with the third person singular.

Examples: I am a student. He is saying he is a student.  
I can't see it very well. She says she can't see it very well.

1. I am bored.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I need an aspirin.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. We live in Aksaray.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I am going to call you this evening.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. I have received a letter from my uncle.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. I have been learning English for six months.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. My father goes to work at 8.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I have to start work at 8.30.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. My parents drink coffee every evening.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. You walk very fast.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. We are waiting for you.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. I am still learning to drive.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. You are smoking too much.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Tom can't help you.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. I haven't finished my breakfast yet.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. We like our school.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. I don't like them.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. I am not rich enough to buy the cheaper one.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. I haven't been feeling very well lately.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. We don't understand you.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. We get up very early.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. I never drink alcohol.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. We are going to do it tomorrow.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. I don't have to go there today.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# REPORTED SPEECH (Question -Mix Tenses)

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Ask</b> , NOT <b>say</b> or <b>tell</b> , is used to report yes/no questions. |  |
| <b>YES/NO QUESTION</b>   | <b>NOUN CLAUSE</b>   |
| Sam said to me, “ <i>Are you hungry?</i> ”                                       | (a) Sam <b>asked</b> me <b>if I was hungry</b> .   |
| Sam said to Jane, “ <i>Are you hungry?</i> ”                                     | (b) Sam <b>asked</b> Jane <b>if she was hungry</b> .   |
| (c) INCORRECT: Sam asked me that I was hungry.                                   | <b>If</b> , NOT <b>that</b> , is used after <b>ask</b> to introduce a noun clause.   |
| (d) Sam <b>asked</b> me <b>if I was hungry</b> .                                 | <b>Whether</b> has the same meaning as <b>if</b> .   |
| (e) Sam <b>asked</b> me <b>whether I was hungry</b> .                            |  |
| (f) Sam <b>asked if</b> I was hungry.  | The (pro)noun object (e.g., <i>me</i> ) may be omitted after <b>ask</b> .  |
| (g) Sam <b>wanted to know if</b> I was hungry.                                   | In addition to <b>ask</b> , yes/no questions can be reported by using <b>want to know</b> , <b>wonder</b> , and <b>inquire</b> . |
| (h) Sam <b>wondered if</b> I was hungry.   |  |
| (i) Sam <b>inquired whether</b> or not I was hungry.                             |  |

Put the following sentences to **reported speech**. Start the sentence with a **present (or future)** tense and with the third person singular.

Examples: Do you live in Rome? He has asked me if I live in Rome.  
Where has he gone? She wants to know where he has gone.

1. Is it raining?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Do you like tea?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Can you speak English?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Are you tourists?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Is Ali your brother?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Do you have to study so hard?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. What is your name?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Where do you work?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. What color are your eyes?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. When will the meeting start?  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. How do they go to work?  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Who is coming to dinner this evening?  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Was it easy?  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Who do you study English with?  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Are they your friends?  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Where do your brothers have lunch?  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. Can't you work quietly?  
\_\_\_\_\_

18. Don't you visit them regularly?

---

19. Why don't you like them?

---

20. How many brothers have you got?

---

21. Do they work every day?

---

22. Have you been ill?

---

23. What are you doing?

---

24. Where are you going?

---

## REPORTED SPEECH

**Example:** The boy said, "My name is Mark."

The boy said (that) his name was Mark.

Do the same:

1. Mary said, "I like Spanish pop music."

---

2. The woman said, "It's not my umbrella, mine is red."

---

3. Tom said, "I have a sports car. It is red."

---

4. Mr. Brown said, "I don't drive a car in the rush hour."

---

5. Terry said, "I eat toasts for breakfast. They are made by my mother."

---

6. Sue said, "The boy is looking at us. I don't know him."

---

7. John said, "I can swim well but I don't have enough time to swim."

---

8. My brother said to me, "I don't want to carry your books!"

---

9. The teacher said, "If you don't study regularly, you'll fail."

---

10. Mr. Green said, "I have to water my flowers twice a week."

---

11. Alice said, "I used to swim well but now I don't."

---

12. Mr. Miller said, "I know your parents. I've met them in the meeting."

---

# REPORTED SPEECH (Questions)

Put the following sentences into reported speech. Start with a verb in the past.

**Examples:**

- a) Is it raining? He asked if it was raining.
- b) **Where** did he go? She asked me **where** he had gone.
- c) What's your name? The policeman wants to know what my name is.

1. What's your job?

---

2. Where do you work?

---

3. Where do you live?

---

4. Where were you yesterday?

---

5. Why are you in London?

---

6. When did you come?

---

7. How did you come?

---

8. Where's your ticket?

---

9. Have you ever been in London?

---

10. Do you know anyone in London?

---

11. Were you in London last month?

---

12. Are you telling the truth?

---

13. Can you help me?

---

14. Do you like tea?

---

15. Did your father go to work yesterday?

---

16. Have you ever ridden a horse?

---

17. Are you going to wash your car today?

---

18. Is it snowing?

---

19. Do you have to work so hard?

---

20. Were you ill last week?

---

21. Where do you live?

---

22. What is the time?

---

23. Where did you stay last night?

---

24. How long have you been here?

**25.** How much money are you going to spend?

---

**26.** What was he doing when the earthquake happened?

---

**27.** Will your mother make a cake this evening?

---

**28.** What did you have for breakfast this morning?

---

**29.** How many hours a week do you work?

---

**30.** What are the children doing in the kitchen?

---

**31.** Is there any food left?

---

**32.** How did it happen?

---

**33.** Does your brother speak English?

---

**34.** Did you bring your books?

---

**35.** Why are you learning English?

---

# REPORTED SPEECH (Mix Type)

Put the following sentences into **reported speech**. Start with the words given.

Examples: I like tea without sugar. He said \_\_\_\_\_.

He said he liked tea without sugar.

Can you tell me the way to Boston? She asked me \_\_\_\_\_.

She asked me if I could tell her the way to Boston.

1. Can you speak English?  
The tourist asked me \_\_\_\_\_
2. I didn't kill anybody.  
The defendant said \_\_\_\_\_
3. I'll fix the TV this evening.  
The man said \_\_\_\_\_
4. I want to talk to your father.  
The policeman told the child \_\_\_\_\_
5. My watch has stopped.  
The woman said \_\_\_\_\_
6. You don't have to come early tomorrow.  
The boss told the salesman \_\_\_\_\_
7. Put the flowers in the vase.  
The woman asked her husband \_\_\_\_\_
8. Be very careful!  
The mother told her son \_\_\_\_\_
9. Bill doesn't go to the theatre.  
Tom said \_\_\_\_\_
10. What can I do for you?  
The receptionist asked the woman \_\_\_\_\_
11. They are going to kill you.  
The man told the prisoners \_\_\_\_\_
12. Don't make any noise.  
The mother told her children \_\_\_\_\_
13. Two policemen are questioning the man.  
He said \_\_\_\_\_
14. I haven't repaired your car yet.  
The mechanic told me \_\_\_\_\_
15. You must stop smoking.  
The doctor told my father \_\_\_\_\_
16. I work for your father.  
I told the boy \_\_\_\_\_
17. Please forgive me.  
The boy asked his father \_\_\_\_\_
18. Where did you stay last night?  
The man asked me \_\_\_\_\_
19. Did it rain last night?  
I asked \_\_\_\_\_
20. Don't play with' the matches.  
The man told his son \_\_\_\_\_
21. How long have you been here?  
The man asked me \_\_\_\_\_
22. It may rain this afternoon.  
The woman said \_\_\_\_\_
23. Stay here until your father comes.  
He told me \_\_\_\_\_
24. Don't you like children?  
He asked me \_\_\_\_\_

# REPORTED SPEECH (Mix Type)

Put the following sentences into reported speech. Start with the words given.

Examples: I **don't** like coffee. He said \_\_\_\_\_

He said he **didn't** like coffee.

Can you tell me the way to Boston? He asked me \_\_\_\_\_.

He asked me if I **could** tell him the way to Boston.

1. I'll come back at 11.  
The boy promised \_\_\_\_\_
2. Your car here again.  
The policeman warned the man \_\_\_\_\_
3. I need a secretary who can type fast.  
The director said \_\_\_\_\_
4. The game is about to start.  
The commentator said \_\_\_\_\_
5. Your son is improving.  
The teacher told the mother \_\_\_\_\_
6. Run faster.  
The officer ordered the soldiers \_\_\_\_\_
7. If it rains tomorrow, we'll stay at home.  
She said \_\_\_\_\_
8. Fasten your belts.  
The air-hostess asked the passengers \_\_\_\_\_
9. I have been working here for three years.  
The boy said \_\_\_\_\_
10. We are going to New York next week.  
He said \_\_\_\_\_
11. Does this car belong to you?  
He asked me \_\_\_\_\_
12. What time is it?  
He wants to know \_\_\_\_\_
13. The plane you are waiting for hasn't arrived yet.  
The man told us \_\_\_\_\_
14. May I watch this cartoon film, dad?  
The boy asked his father \_\_\_\_\_
15. There will be a change in the cabinet.  
The newspaper reported \_\_\_\_\_
16. Stay in bed for a week.  
The doctor advised the patient \_\_\_\_\_
17. Who took my pen?  
Susan asked \_\_\_\_\_
18. Where is my house?  
The drunken man is asking the policeman \_\_\_\_\_
19. I lost my passport yesterday.  
I told the officer \_\_\_\_\_
20. I'll have to go there tomorrow.  
He said \_\_\_\_\_
21. I won't be able to help you.  
She said \_\_\_\_\_
22. Why didn't you call me yesterday?  
She asked me \_\_\_\_\_
23. I would buy it if I had enough money.  
He said \_\_\_\_\_

# REPORTED SPEECH

Write sentences about Jane's trip to Paris:

**Example:** We're taking the nine o'clock plane.

Jane told me they were taking the nine o'clock plane.

1. I'll have to get up early.

She said \_\_\_\_\_

2. I don't really like traveling by air.

She told me \_\_\_\_\_

3. But it's the easiest way to travel.

But she decided \_\_\_\_\_

4. We're going to spend a week in Paris.

She told me \_\_\_\_\_

5. I want to go up the Eiffel Tower.

She said \_\_\_\_\_

6. We've been to Paris before.

She told me \_\_\_\_\_

7. But we didn't see everything.

But she said \_\_\_\_\_

8. I'll send you a postcard.

She said \_\_\_\_\_

9. But I won't write you a letter.

But she told me \_\_\_\_\_

10. I'm very excited!

She said \_\_\_\_\_

# REPORTED SPEECH (Mix Type)

REPORT what the guests said at a wedding last Saturday:

**Example:** Miss Moore: "They'll make a lovely couple."

Miss Moore said (that) they would make a lovely couple.

1. Mr. Smith: "They're going to live in Brighton."

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Mrs. Jones: "The bride and the groom are very nice young people."

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Mr. Roberts: "The bride is wearing a beautiful wedding dress."

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Mr. Clarke: "The couple's parents look happy."

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Miss Mayall: "The bride's father has bought them a big flat."

\_\_\_\_\_

# REPORTED SPEECH (Mix Type)

Respond as in the example.

Example: a) A: I **started** to learn English six months ago. B: What **did** he say?

He said he **had started** to learn English six months before.

b) A: Where are you going? B: What did he ask you?

He **asked** me where I was going.

1. Wait outside and don't come in until we call you. What did he tell you?

---

2. Shall I fill in the form for you? What did the receptionist ask you?

---

3. I needn't wash the dishes now. What did the woman say?

---

4. I'll blow up the plane. What did the hijacker threaten to do?

---

5. Shall we wait till they arrive. What did they wonder?

---

6. I needn't go to work next week. What did he say?

---

7. Do you think they will help us? What did you ask him?

---

8. We must hurry up if we don't want to miss the train? What did he say?

---

9. Where can I get this letter translated? What did she ask you?

---

10. I haven't heard from him since he went to Spain. What did she say?

---

11. Shall I know the results by next Monday? What did he ask?

---

12. I have to work overtime this evening. What did he say?

---

13. Please give me some more time. What did the man beg his creditor to do?

---

14. If I were you, I wouldn't tell anybody about it. What did he tell you?

---

15. What did you do with the money I gave you? What did your mother ask you?

---

16. What were you doing when we arrived? What did you ask him?

---

17. Does your father help you with your homework? What did you ask her?

---

18. I must find the money by next Friday. What did he say?

---

19. We are going to meet you at the airport. What did he tell her?

---

20. Are you still watching TV? What did the man ask his children?

---

21. You must do as you are told. What did the boss tell you?

---

22. Can't you see I am busy? What did he ask you?

---

23. I don't think I'll be able to come tomorrow. What did the plumber say?

---

24. I haven't seen him since he left school. What did you say?

---

# IF CLAUSES

## Summary of Basic Verb Form Usage in Conditional Sentences

| MEANING OF THE "IF CLAUSE"     | VERB FORM IN THE "IF CLAUSE" | VERB FORM of THE "RESULT CLAUSE"           |  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| True in the present / future   | <i>simple present</i>        | <i>simple present / simple future</i>      | (a) If I <b>have</b> enough time, I <b>write</b> to my parents every week<br>(b) If I <b>have</b> enough time tomorrow, I <b>will write</b> to my parents.             |
| Untrue in the present / future | <i>simple past</i>           | <b>would</b> + <i>simple form</i>          | (c) If <b>had</b> enough time, I <b>would write</b> to my parents ( <i>In truth, I don't have enough time, so I didn't write to them.</i> )                            |
| Untrue in the past             | <i>past perfect</i>          | <b>would have</b> + <i>past participle</i> | (d) If I <b>had had</b> enough time, I <b>would have written</b> to my parents yesterday. ( <i>In truth, I did not have enough time, so I did not write to them.</i> ) |

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1)

|   |   |
|---|---|
| (e) If I <b>don't eat</b> breakfast, I <b>always get</b> hungry during class.<br>(f) Water <b>freezes</b> ( <b>will freeze</b> ) if the temperature <b>goes</b> below 32°F / 0°C.<br>(g) If I <b>don't eat</b> breakfast tomorrow morning, I <b>will get</b> hungry during class.<br>(h) If the weather <b>is</b> nice tomorrow, we <b>will go</b> on a picnic. | In (e): The simple present is used in the result clause to express a habitual activity or situation.<br>In (f): Either the simple present or the simple future is used in the result clause to express an established, predictable fact.<br>In (g) and (h): The simple future is used in the result clause when the sentence concerns a particular activity or situation in the future.<br>Note: The simple present, not the simple future, is used in the "if clause." |
|---|---|

Rewrite the following sentences using the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. All of the sentences should be in **Type 1**.

**Example:** If it (rain) \_\_ tomorrow, we (stay) \_\_ at home.

If it rains tomorrow, we'll stay at home.

Nobody (help) \_\_ you if you (not ask) \_\_ for help.

Nobody will help you if you don't ask for help.

1. (not wait) \_\_ for me if I (not come) \_\_ till 9.30.

2. \_\_ if you throw it. (break)

3. \_\_ they (play) \_\_ football if it (not rain) \_\_ ?

4. \_\_ he (forgive) \_\_ me if I (apologize) \_\_ to him?

5. He (help) \_\_ you if you (give) \_\_ him some money.

6. I (be) \_\_ late for work if I (not catch) \_\_ the bus.

7. I (buy) \_\_ the tickets if I (leave) \_\_ work early.

8. I (dismiss) \_\_ you if you (come) \_\_ late again.

---

9. I (go) \_\_ to the party if he (invite) \_\_\_\_ me.

---

10. I (help) \_\_ you if you (give) \_\_ me some sweet.

---

11. I (send) \_\_ you out if you (keep) \_\_ making noise.

---

12. I \_\_ worried if you don't come to my party. (be)

---

13. I \_\_ at home if it rains. (stay)

---

14. If he (beat) \_\_ his opponent, he (get) \_\_ the gold medal.

---

15. If I (have) \_\_ time this evening, I (watch) \_\_ TV.

---

16. If I meet him, I \_\_ him your message. (give)

---

17. If I \_\_ the exam, I'll take it again. (fail)

---

18. If my father (come) \_\_ , I (phone) \_\_ you.

---

19. If the train\_\_ late, we'll get on a bus. (be)

---

20. If you (drive) \_\_ so fast, you (have) \_\_ an accident.

---

21. If you (eat) \_\_ everything, you (be) \_\_ ill.

---

22. If you (look) \_\_ carefully, you (see) \_\_ where it is.

---

23. If you (not take) \_\_ this medicine, you (get) \_\_ worse.

---

24. If you (push) \_\_ this button, somebody (come) \_\_ .

---

25. If you \_\_, you won't be successful. (- / study)

---

26. I'll come back later if he \_\_ now. (sleep)

---

27. Please (call) \_\_ me if you (need) \_\_ something.

---

28. They (win) \_\_ the match if they (score) \_\_ one more goal.

---

29. We (be) \_\_ late for school if we (not hurry) \_\_ .

---

# CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1) Making Sentences

Make **conditional sentences (Type 1)** as in the example.

**Examples:** Perhaps it will rain. We will get wet.

If it rains, we will get wet.

I may oversleep. I will be late for work.

If I oversleep, I will be late for work.

1. I like swimming. I won't go jogging.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I know how to drive. I don't need a driver.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. It doesn't rain. We don't need an umbrella.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. It takes a short time to get my school from here. I don't have to get on a bus.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. You haven't got a video, so you can't record the film on TV.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. They may come early. I'll entertain them.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Maybe my father will buy a car. I'll learn to drive.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Perhaps the dog will bark. The man will wake up.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. You must obey the traffic rules. You won't have an accident.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. You shouldn't eat mushrooms. You may get poisoned.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Don't drink cold water. You may be ill.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. The man may steal something. The policeman will catch him.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Memorize the irregular verbs or the teacher will be angry with you.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Turn down the radio or I'll have a headache.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Give me your money or I'll kill you.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Perhaps they'll find you. They'll put you to prison.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. Don't touch the wires. You'll get an electric shock.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. Ask that policeman. He'll tell you the way.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. Your teacher may come late. Do not make any noise.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. We may take a taxi. We won't have to walk.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. You should help your mother. We'll get ready quicker.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. Bring your ball. We can play football together.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. Perhaps he will sell his house. He will go to Australia.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. They may postpone the meeting. He will get angry.  
\_\_\_\_\_
25. Take your umbrella or you'll get wet.  
\_\_\_\_\_
26. The car may not start. We'll push it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
27. Perhaps the bus will stop. I'll get on the bus.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**28.** Maybe the teacher won't come. I'll go home.

---

**29.** Be careful. You may break the window.

---

**30.** Maybe I'll go abroad and get a job.

---

**31.** You must study hard, or you will fail.

---

**32.** Don't play with those toys, or you can't finish your homework.

---

**33.** Be quick, or you won't catch the school bus.

---

**34.** Don't tell a lie again, or you'll be punished.

---

**35.** Try to speak to the tourists, or you can't improve your English.

---

# CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1) if/when

Complete the sentences with any vocabulary you wish:

1. I'll go out **when**\_\_

2. You mustn't go to bed **when**\_\_

3. I'll forgive him **if**\_\_

4. **When** it stops raining, we'll\_\_

5. \_\_**when** he graduates from university.

6. \_\_ **if** you go to bed late.

7. I can't eat it **if**\_\_

8. **If** you hurry, \_\_

9. My father will sell his car **if**\_\_

10. I can lend you my motorbike **if**\_\_

11. We can't go on picnic **if**\_\_

12. I'll help him **if**\_\_

13. If the weather is bad tomorrow, \_\_

14. we hitchhike to work, \_\_

15. If I don't sleep well tonight, \_\_

16. If you don't fix the broken window \_\_

17. If he doesn't cut his hair, \_\_

18. If \_\_, they'll go to a restaurant tonight.

19. If \_\_, his mother will be happy.

20. If \_\_, his mother will be sad.

21. If \_\_, her boss will fire him.

22. If \_\_, their friends will be angry.

23. If I study hard, \_\_

24. If it's sunny at the weekend, \_\_

25. If I become rich, \_\_

26. If I go to London, \_\_

# CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1)

**Find correct items and complete the following sentences:**

**Example:** If we \_\_\_\_ go \_\_\_\_ to London, ..... we"ll \_\_\_\_ visit our cousin.

1. If they \_\_\_\_ their homework tonight, their teacher\_\_\_\_ happy.

---

2. If the weather \_\_\_\_ good, George \_\_\_\_ swimming this weekend.

---

3. If he \_\_\_\_ swimming this weekend, \_\_\_\_ a wonderful time.

---

4. If you don't eat your dinner tonight, \_\_\_\_hungry.

---

5. If . \_\_\_\_tired, they'll go to sleep early tonight.

---

6. If it \_\_\_\_ , she'll wear her new raincoat.

---

7. If you \_\_\_\_too many cookies after dinner tonight,\_\_\_\_get a stomachache.

---

8. If I \_\_\_\_too much coffee, \_\_\_\_\_. get a headache.

---

# CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1) Make Sentences

**Make sentences.**

1. weight / you / if / eat / much / so / won' t / lose / you / fat

---

2. at / we / come / ready / will / be / if / you / five

---

3. the / if / full / wait / one / bus / is / have / we / to / will / for / another

---

4. you / feel ill / go to doctor (if)

---

5. the light / green / cross the street (when)

---

6. you / pay for it / want to park (if)

---

7. it / melt / you / heat it (when)

---

8. I / phone you / I / see him (when)

---

9. weight / you / if / eat / much / so / won' t / lose / you / fat

---

10. at / we / come / ready / will / be / if / you / five

---

11. the / if / full / wait / one / bus / is / have / we / to / will / for / another

---

# CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

## (Type 1) Answer the Questions

*Answer the questions.*

1. What will you do if you are late for school?

2. Will you go out if it rains?

3. What will your brother do if he isn't allowed to go abroad?

4. Where will you go this Summer if you have a few days off?

5. What will happen if your team loses the match?

6. What will your wife do if you don't telephone her? (be angry)

7. What will you do if you lose something valuable?

8. What can you do if you feel ill in class?

9. What will you do if you have a personal problem?

10. If you go to Ankara, where will you visit?

11. What will happen if they drive carelessly?

12. What can't you do if you don't have any money?

13. If you don't have an identification card, what will happen?

14. What will you do if the weather is rainy tomorrow?

15. What can't you do if you don't have an umbrella?

16. What can't you do if you don't study hard?

17. What can't your daughter do if she doesn't practice English regularly?

18. Where will your parents take you if it is sunny on Sunday?

19. What will you do if you are free tomorrow?

20. If she eats so much, what will happen?

21. What can't they do if the water is dirty?

22. What will you do if you are late for school?

23. Will you go out if it rains?

24. What will your brother do if he isn't allowed to go abroad?

25. Where will you go this Summer if you have a few days off?

26. What will happen if your team loses the match?

---

27. What will your wife do if you don't telephone her? (be angry)

---

28. What will you do if you lose something valuable?

---

29. What can you do if you feel ill in class?

---

30. What will you do if you have a personal problem?

---

31. If you go to Ankara, where will you visit?

---

32. What will happen if they drive carelessly?

---

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2)

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(i) If I <b>taught</b> this class, I <b>wouldn't give</b> tests.<br/>         (j) If he <b>were</b> here right now, he <b>would help</b> us.<br/>         (k) If I <b>were</b> you, I <b>would accept</b> their invitation.</p> | <p>In (i): In truth, I don't teach this class.<br/>         In (j): In truth, he is not here right now.<br/>         In (k): In truth, I am not you.<br/>         Note: <b>Were</b> is used for both singular and plural subjects. <b>Was</b> (with <i>I</i>, <i>he</i>, <i>she</i>, <i>it</i>) is sometimes used in very informal speech but is not generally considered grammatically acceptable.</p> |
|--|---|

Write the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. All sentences should be in Type II.

Examples: a) If I (be) \_\_ you, I (ask) \_\_ her.

If I were you, I would ask her.

b) If I (have) \_\_ enough money, I (buy) \_\_ a computer.

If I had enough money, I would buy a computer.

1. If I lived by the sea, I \_\_ every day. (go / swim.)

2. The teacher would be angry if he \_\_ out what was happening. (find)

3. If I \_\_ him, I wouldn't do that. (be)

4. If it \_\_ we could go out. (stop / rain)

5. You would feel better if you \_\_ more exercise. (take)

6. If you \_\_ more carefully, you wouldn't have so many accidents. (drive)

7. If I had a spare pencil, I \_\_ it to you. (give)

8. If I had to keep my money in the bank, I \_\_ that one. (- / choose)

9. I \_\_ about going on holiday if I were him. (- / worry)

10. If I \_\_ up earlier, I'd get to work on time. (get)

11. I (travel) \_\_ around the world if I (have) \_\_ a lot of money,

12. If you (listen) \_\_ to the teacher carefully, you (get) \_\_ better marks.

13. If he (work) \_\_ harder, he (be) \_\_ richer.

14. If I (be) \_\_ the richest man in the world, I (help) \_\_ the poor.

15. I (write) \_\_ to him if I (know) \_\_ his address.

16. You (understand) \_\_ it if you (read) \_\_ it carefully.

17. They (give) \_\_ you the job if you (wear) \_\_ a suit.

18. I (do) \_\_\_\_ it if I (know) \_\_\_\_ how to.

---

19. If the boxer (be) \_\_\_\_ more courageous, he (win) \_\_\_\_ the match.

---

20. It (be) \_\_\_\_ wonderful if your brother (be) \_\_\_\_ here.

---

21. If the sun (not rise) \_\_\_, the world (be) \_\_\_\_ dark.

---

22. If I (have) \_\_\_\_ time, I (learn) \_\_\_\_ Chinese and Arabic.

---

23. I (not recognize) \_\_\_\_ you if I (see) \_\_\_\_ you in the street.

---

24. It (be) \_\_\_\_ wonderful if I (have) \_\_\_\_ a motorbike.

---

25. I (walk) \_\_\_\_ there if it (not be) \_\_\_\_ so far.

---

26. If I (can speak) \_\_\_\_ English, I (be) \_\_\_\_ a guide.

---

27. \_\_\_\_ you (help) \_\_\_\_ me if I (need) \_\_\_\_ help?

---

28. What \_\_\_\_ you (do) \_\_\_\_ if you (be) \_\_\_\_ me?

---

29. What \_\_\_\_ you (do) \_\_\_\_ if you (be) \_\_\_\_ the Prime Minister?

---

30. Where \_\_\_\_ you (go) \_\_\_\_ if they (offer) \_\_\_\_ you a free holiday?

---

31. You (not learn) \_\_\_\_ English if you (not study) \_\_\_\_.

---

32. If he (be) \_\_\_\_ here now, he (solve) \_\_\_\_ it.

---

33. I (buy) \_\_\_\_ that coat if it (fit) \_\_\_\_ me.

---

34. What \_\_\_\_ you (do) \_\_\_\_ if someone (rob) \_\_\_\_ you?

---

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2)

Make *conditional sentences (Type II)* as in the example.

Examples: a) The man coughs heavily. He smokes a lot.

*The man **wouldn't** cough heavily if he **didn't** smoke so much.*

b) The boy is very short. He can't play basketball.

*If the boy **weren't** so short, he **could** play basketball.*

1. The car is too expensive. I can't buy it.

---

2. He gets good marks. He studies hard.

---

3. The woman goes to bed late. She gets up late.

---

4. I don't have enough money. I can't buy a car.

---

5. I don't like swimming. I don't go to the sea-side.

---

6. Ali eats a lot. He is very fat.

---

7. Ali can't run fast. He is very fat.

---

8. I catch the 8.15 bus. I get to work on time.

---

9. He doesn't watch TV. He doesn't like it.

---

10. She doesn't cook. She doesn't know how to.

---

11. We live in . We have our own house.

---

12. I set my alarm clock. I wake up early in the morning.

---

13. They don't like you. You don't treat them very well.

---

14. He never washes his car. His car looks old.

---

15. She doesn't drink tea. Her doctor doesn't let her.

---

16. He doesn't have a brother. He feels bored.

---

17. He speaks very fast. I don't understand his words.

---

18. He keeps his promises. Everybody trusts him.

---

19. He often tells lies. Nobody believes him.

---

20. He does his homework carelessly. He makes a lot of mistakes.

---

21. She types carelessly. The boss gets angry with her.

---

22. He is too fat. He doesn't exercise.

---

23. He talks too much. Nobody likes him.

---

24. He doesn't speak French. He doesn't want to go to France.

---

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) Asking Questions

Answer the questions.

1. What would they do if they knew your telephone number?

2. What would you do if you were rich?

3. What three things would you take with you if you had to stay on an island alone?

4. Would you help the poor if you had a lot of money?

5. What would you do if you saw a housebreaking?

6. What would you do if you could sing as well as a singer?

7. What would happen if it rained heavily during the fire?

8. Where would you be right now if you weren't here?

9. What would you do if you saw a fire in the forest?

10. Who would you give the Nobel Prize if you were authorized?

11. What would you do if you weren't so busy?

12. If you had to choose a city to live, which one would you prefer?

13. What would you do if you were a teacher?

14. I have never had a good job. What would you do if you were me?

15. There is water pollution in a town. If you were the Mayor, what would you do?

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) Complete Sentences

**Complete the sentences.**

**Example:** She would be very happy, \_\_ if she listened to her father.

1. I'd take a knife, a radio and a compass if \_\_\_\_.

2. If \_\_\_\_ it stopped snowing.

3. If I had enough time, \_\_\_\_.

4. If I heard someone shouting for help at night, I \_\_\_\_.

5. If you didn't help me, \_\_\_\_.

6. If you lived in the country, \_\_\_\_.

7. We could buy everything if \_\_\_\_.

8. You wouldn't be fined if \_\_\_\_.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) Meaningful Sentences

**Make meaningful sentences.**

1. be / my / grandfather / alive / if / were / would / over / ninety / now / he

---

2. swimming / if / I / would / were / now / holiday / on / I / go

---

3. if / wouldn't / a / a / teacher / I / I / give / test / every day / were / students / my /

---

4. me / be / he / now / watching / sleeping / would / weren't / if / TV

---

5. I / I / you / tired / if / weren't / could / help

---

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCE TYPE 1 – TYPE 2

*Combine the following sentences into conditional sentences.*

**Examples:** a) I may see him. I'll invite him to dinner.

If I see him, I'll invite him to dinner.

b) She speaks rudely. People don't like her.

If she didn't speak rudely, people would like her.

c) I didn't invite him to dinner. I didn't see him.

I would have invited to dinner if I had seen him.

1. I didn't lock my car. It was stolen.

---

2. He never pays attention to the teacher. He never understands the lesson.

---

3. I lost my ticket. I had to buy another one.

---

4. Perhaps it will snow. We'll play in the snow.

---

5. She is unhappy. She doesn't live with her mother.

---

6. I bought nothing. The shops were closed.

---

7. I may answer the questions. I'll get a good mark.

---

8. The man crossed the street at the red light. The car hit him.

---

9. I don't have enough time. I can't learn Spanish.

---

10. I don't know how to swim. I don't go to the sea-side.

---

11. He followed the instructions. He worked the machine easily.

---

12. The boy may cry. I'll give him some milk.

---

13. Perhaps the man will call. Tell him to call later.

---

14. The referee came late. The match started late.

---

15. She is very fat. She doesn't exercise.

---

**16.** She practices every day. She plays the piano very well.

---

**17.** I didn't know you were at home. I didn't call on you.

---

**18.** He didn't sell his car. They offered him less than it was worth.

---

**19.** He may want to become a doctor. He must go to the faculty of medicine.

---

**20.** He works very hard. His boss pays him a lot of money.

---

**21.** Maybe they'll arrive early. They'll visit you.

---

**22.** I didn't see the red light. I didn't stop.

---

**23.** She speaks fast. Nobody understands her.

---

**24.** The man hit me. I hit the man.

---

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 3)

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>(l) If you <b>had told</b> me about the problem, I <b>would have helped</b> you.<br/>         (m) If they <b>had studied</b>, they <b>would have passed</b> the exam.<br/>         (n) If I <b>hadn't slipped</b> on the ice, I <b>wouldn't have broken</b> my arm.</p> | <p>In (l): In truth, you did not tell me about.<br/>         In (m): In truth, they did not study. They failed the exam.<br/>         In (n): In truth, I slipped on the ice. I broke my arm. Note: The auxiliary verbs are almost always contracted in speech. "If you'd told me, I would have helped you (or: I'd have helped you)."</p> |
|--|--|

Rewrite the following sentences using the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. All sentences should be in Type 3

**Examples:** If the man (not run) \_\_ so fast, he (not hit) \_\_ the lamp post.  
*If the man hadn't run so fast, he wouldn't have hit the lamp post.*  
 If you (call) \_\_ me, I (meet) \_\_ you at the airport.  
*If you had called me, I would have met you at the airport.*

1. If he \_\_ in his off ice, I'd have seen him. (be)

2. I \_\_ angry with you if you had spoken politely. (- / be)

3. If the driver hadn't been so careless, there \_\_ an accident. (- / be)

4. If he had worked harder, he \_\_ very rich. (be)

5. I would've lent you some if I \_\_ a lot of money. (have)

6. If the driver (not stop) \_\_ on time, there (be) \_\_ an accident.

7. You (get) \_\_ better marks if you (study) \_\_ hard.

8. Our team (win) \_\_ the match if our goalkeeper (be) \_\_ more careful.

9. If we (not sell) \_\_ our land, we not (move) \_\_ here.

10. If the driver (not be) \_\_ drunk, nobody (be killed) \_\_

11. If the gambler (give) \_\_ up gambling, he (not lose) \_\_ his house.

12. You (catch) \_\_ the bus if you (leave) \_\_ home earlier.

13. You (find) \_\_ the key if you (look) \_\_ under the mat.

14. The milk (not boil) \_\_ over if the woman (not talk) \_\_ on phone so much.

15. I (go) \_\_ to the theatre yesterday if I (have) \_\_ time.

16. She (not take) \_\_ a taxi if she (not be) \_\_ late.

17. I (lend) \_\_ you some money if I (have) \_\_ enough money.

18. The baby (not cry) \_\_ if she not (be) \_\_ hungry.

19. If he (stop) \_\_\_\_ smoking earlier, he (not have) \_\_\_\_ an operation.

20. If her TV set (not be) \_\_\_\_ out of order, she (watch) \_\_\_\_ the film last night.

21. The match (not be postponed) \_\_\_\_ if it (not rain) \_\_\_\_ so heavily.

22. The manager (not dismiss) \_\_\_\_ the typist if she (not make) \_\_\_\_ so many mistakes. "

23. If you (do) what I had told you nothing (happen) \_\_\_\_.

24. If the questions (be) \_\_\_\_ easier, nobody (fail) \_\_\_\_.

25. The young girl (not marry) \_\_\_\_ the old man if he (not be) \_\_\_\_ so rich.

26. I (call) \_\_\_\_ you if I (not lose) \_\_\_\_ your telephone number.

27. If you (listen) \_\_\_\_ more carefully, you (understand) \_\_\_\_ what the teacher said.

28. I (buy) \_\_\_\_ it if it (not be) \_\_\_\_ so expensive.

29. The boy (go) \_\_\_\_ to school if his mother (not be) \_\_\_\_ very ill.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCE - TYPE 3

Make conditional sentences (Type 3) as in the example.

**Examples:** The man had an accident. He didn't go to work.  
If the man hadn't had an accident, he would have gone to work.  
I didn't help him. I didn't know that he needed help.  
I would have helped him if I had known that he needed help.

1. I didn't buy the sweater. It was too expensive.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The driver ran over the cat. He didn't see it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I lost your telephone number. That was why I didn't phone you.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I read the newspaper. I found out about his marriage.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The man left the cooker on. The house caught fire.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. He parked his car in the wrong place. He had to pay a fine.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. He didn't write the man's name down. He forgot it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The boy didn't do as his mother told him. He got into trouble.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. He didn't look after his old father. His son didn't look after him.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. The man didn't lock the door. His house was broken into.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. He didn't go to school. He didn't learn to read and write.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. The judge ordered the man out. He talked **progressively**.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. He didn't go to the football match. He didn't have a ticket.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. He had a flat tire. He was late for the meeting.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. She was ill. She didn't study for the exam.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. The man was able to escape. The guard fell asleep.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. The workers went on strike. The boss didn't give them a rise.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. Everybody had to stay indoors. The government imposed a curfew.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. He spilt the ink. He wasn't careful.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. The bus stopped suddenly. The lorry behind hit the bus.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. The boat overturned because the sea was very rough.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. The book was boring. I didn't read it.  
\_\_\_\_\_
23. The bus broke down. I had to take a taxi.  
\_\_\_\_\_
24. I didn't know that you were ill. I didn't visit you.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCE - TYPE 3 Asking Questions

Answer the questions.

1. What would you have done if you had had difficulty in English?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What would you have done if I hadn't lent you the money you needed?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What would you have done if you had failed last year?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What would you have done last Sunday if the weather hadn't been rainy?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. If you hadn't been ill yesterday, what would you have done?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What would have happened if the police had caught him? (be questioned)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. What would your classmates have done if they had known you were ill?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. If your father hadn't helped you draw the map, what would you have done?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. If you had had some water, what would you have put it in? (radiator)  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. What could you have repaired if you had had the necessary tools? (TV set)  
\_\_\_\_\_

## **CONDITIONAL SENTENCE - TYPE 3 Making Sentence**

1. He was too fat to play soccer. (if)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. He couldn't buy any sweets because he lost her money. (if)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The car in front of me stopped suddenly, so I had to brake. (if)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I went to bed late, so I got up late. (if)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. He couldn't pass the test because the questions were very difficult. (if)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. It was too heavy for me to lift. (if)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. If I had known his address, I'd have helped you to find him. (because)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I'd have called the police if I had seen something strange. (so)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. If she hadn't been so careless, she wouldn't have made so many mistakes. (so)  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. He was too old to play basketball with us. (if)  
\_\_\_\_\_

## **CONDITIONAL SENTENCE TYPE 1 – TYPE 2 – TYPE 3**

*Rewrite the following sentences using the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.*

**Examples:** If you (get) \_\_\_\_\_ up early, you **wouldn't have missed** the bus.

If you **had got** up early, you **wouldn't have missed** the bus.

What would you do if you (find) \_\_\_\_\_ a wallet with a lot of money?

What would you do if you **found** a wallet with a lot of money?

1. If you come late again, I (not let) \_\_\_\_ you come in.

2. If I (be) \_\_\_\_ you, I wouldn't do it.

3. If I had known, I (help) \_\_\_\_ you.

4. I (buy) \_\_\_\_ it if I had enough money.

5. I will buy a bicycle if I (save) \_\_\_\_ enough money.

6. If they arrive before midday, we (go) \_\_\_\_ with them.

7. It (be) \_\_\_\_ terrible if the rain hadn't stopped.

8. If I were in your shoes, I (talk) \_\_\_\_ to him once more.

9. I would never have asked him if you (tell) \_\_\_\_ me before.

10. I will let you know if he (come) \_\_\_\_ early.

11. You (be) \_\_\_\_ ill if you ate so much.

12. If she had set the alarm clock, she (get) \_\_\_\_ up earlier.

13. The plane wouldn't have crashed if it (be checked) \_\_\_\_ before take-off.

14. We (watch) \_\_\_\_ the football match if it is broadcast live.

15. Don't move if you (want) \_\_\_\_ to live.

16. The robbers wouldn't have escaped if their car (not break) \_\_\_\_ down.

17. You must speak to him if he (keep) \_\_\_\_ coming late.

18. He would be very angry if we (wake) \_\_\_\_ him up.

19. What \_\_\_\_ you (do) \_\_\_\_ if they had put you in prison?

20. If you (see) \_\_\_\_ Mr. Smith, give him my regards.

21. The driver would have slowed down if he (see) \_\_\_\_ the policeman.

22. Would you punish him if he (be) \_\_\_\_ your brother?

23. If the rain (stop) \_\_\_\_, we will go out.

24. If I see him, I (talk) \_\_\_\_ to him.

25. Bodrum \_\_ (be) ideal for a holiday if it weren't so crowded.

26. He will be ill if he \_\_ (eat) so much. \_\_

27. He will play tennis if the weather \_\_ (be) good.

28. I \_\_ (come) if I had time.

29. I would be very happy if she \_\_ (be) my sister.

30. I wouldn't say it if I \_\_ (be) you.

31. If he \_\_\_\_ (go) to bed early, he will get up early.

32. If he \_\_\_\_ (tell) me, I could help him.

33. If he touches this wire, he \_\_\_\_ (get) a shock.

34. If I \_\_ (be) you, I wouldn't buy that car.

35. If I knew, I \_\_\_\_ (come) earlier.

36. If she \_\_\_\_ (read) the book carefully, she will understand it.

37. If she \_\_\_\_ (wear) a necklace, her dress will look better.

38. If the dinner isn't ready, I \_\_\_\_ (go) out.

39. If you didn't water the flowers, they \_\_\_\_ die).

40. If you don't hurry, you \_\_\_\_ (miss) the bus.

41. If you don't water the flowers, they \_\_\_\_ (die).

42. If you go near the dog, it\_\_\_\_ (bite) you.

43. She could win the race if she \_\_\_\_ (try).

44. The children can stay up late if they\_\_\_\_ (be) good.

45. The teacher will be very angry if you\_\_\_\_ (not do) your homework.

46. We would die if the plane \_\_\_\_ (crash).

47. What will you do if you \_\_\_\_ (get) a bad mark?

48. You will get wet if it\_\_\_\_ (rain).

49. He \_\_ (not / live) in İstanbul if he \_\_ (hate) it.

50. I \_\_ (not / have to) borrow any money from you if I \_\_\_\_ (get) my salary tomorrow.

51. If he \_\_(not / arrive) soon, we \_\_(have to) have dinner without him.

52. If I had known that he was sleeping, I \_\_ (not / disturb) him.

---

53. If I had lost all my money, I \_\_ (be) very unhappy.

---

54. If the family had saved enough money, they\_\_ (buy) a new flat.

---

55. If the policeman had seen the thief, he \_\_ (arrest) him.

---

56. If you \_\_ (write) the letters, I\_\_ (post) them.

---

57. If you \_\_ (invite) her to the dance, she \_\_ (be) very pleased.

---

58. If you \_\_ (not / leave) immediately, I \_\_ (call) the police.

---

59. If you \_\_ (retire) soon, you \_\_ (make) yourself ill.

---

60. If you \_ (write) him a letter, he \_ (know) our address.

---

61. If you had phoned me before you came, you \_\_ (find) me at home.

---

62. People wouldn't cross the Bosphorus, if they \_\_ (not / build) those bridges.

---

63. The buildings wouldn't have burned to ashes if the firemen \_\_ (come) in time.

---

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCE TYPE 1 – TYPE 2 – TYPE 3

Complete the following sentences with an appropriate conditional clause.

Examples: a) If you study hard, \_\_\_\_\_.

If you study hard, you'll pass the exam.

b) If the driver hadn't been drunk, \_\_\_\_.  
If the driver hadn't been drunk, nothing would have happened.

1. If it doesn't rain tomorrow, \_\_\_\_.

2. What would you do if, \_\_\_\_.

3. Nobody would have been killed if \_\_\_\_.

4. If I were you, \_\_\_\_.

5. If she hadn't turned off the tap, \_\_\_\_.

6. I won't talk to him again if \_\_\_\_.

7. I would have finished my homework last night if \_\_\_\_.

8. If he were a good boy, \_\_\_\_.

9. You will earn a lot of money if \_\_\_\_.

10. They will never forgive you if \_\_\_\_.

11. If you had told me earlier, \_\_\_\_.

12. If you want to learn English, \_\_\_\_.

13. I would give you the book if \_\_\_\_.

14. I wouldn't have missed the plane if \_\_\_\_.

15. You must hurry up if \_\_\_\_.

16. If I were the Prime Minister, \_\_\_\_.

17. If they hadn't taken him to hospital, \_\_\_\_.

18. He wouldn't have caused trouble if \_\_\_\_.

19. Come as early as possible if \_\_\_\_.

20. I wouldn't have shouted at him if \_\_\_\_.

21. What would you do if \_\_\_\_.

22. If they call me, \_\_\_\_.

23. He could have died if \_\_\_\_.

24. If you drive very fast \_\_\_\_.

25. Would you give me some money if \_\_\_\_.

26. If she were my sister, \_\_\_\_.

---

**27.** I would spend every winter in Miami if \_\_\_\_.

---

**28.** If they have time tomorrow, \_\_\_\_.

---

**29.** Don't give him anything if \_\_\_\_.

---

**30.** We would go to the cinema if \_\_\_\_.

---

**31.** If John worked harder, \_\_\_\_.

---

**32.** They would find me if \_\_\_\_.

---

**33.** If I had a lot of money, \_\_\_\_.

---

**34.** You could live more comfortably if \_\_\_\_.

---

**35.** If she were a good girl, \_\_\_\_.

---

## IF / WHEN CLAUSES

*Answer the questions.*

1. What will you do when you see the red light?

2. What can't you do when it is dark?
3. What must you do if you are ill?
4. What will you do when she comes? (tell her the truth)
5. What happens when the sun sets? (get dark)
6. When is it hot? (when)
7. When do we wear thick clothes? (when)
8. What must you do when you have a headache?
9. What must you do if you are late for school?
10. What must you have if you want to write on the board?

# WISH CLAUSE IF ONLY

|                                 |  |  |   |
|---------------------------------|--|--|---|
| <b>A wish about the future</b>  | (a) She <b>will not tell</b> me.<br>(b) He <b>isn't going to be</b> here.<br>(c) She <b>can't come</b> tomorrow. | I wish (that) she <b>would tell</b> me.<br>I wish he <b>were going to be</b> here.<br>I wish she <b>could come</b> tomorrow. | <b>Wish</b> is used when the speaker wants reality to be different. To be exactly the opposite. Verb forms similar to those in conditional sentences are used. Notice the examples. |
| <b>A wish about the present</b> | (d) I <b>don't know</b> French.<br>(e) It <b>is raining</b> right now.<br>(f) I <b>can't speak</b> Japanese.     | I wish I <b>knew</b> French.<br>I wish it <b>weren't raining</b> right now.<br>I wish I <b>could speak</b> Japanese.         | <b>Wish</b> is followed by a noun clause. The use of <b>that</b> is optional. Usually it is omitted in speaking.  |
| <b>A wish about the past</b>    | (g) John <b>didn't come</b> .<br>(h) Mary <b>couldn't come</b> .   | I wish John <b>had come</b> *<br>I wish Mary <b>could have come</b> .  |   |

**Fill in the blanks with suitable auxiliary verbs.**

1. I can't speak Chinese, but I wish I \_\_\_\_.

2. She isn't a student at university, but she wishes she \_\_\_\_.

3. My father has to get up early every day, but he wishes he \_\_\_\_.

4. She can't sing well, but she wishes she \_\_\_\_.

5. I haven't got a car, but I wish I \_\_\_\_.

6. They aren't rich, but they wish they \_\_\_\_.

7. I have to do a lot of homework every day, but I wish I \_\_\_\_.

8. My brother isn't very polite to the guests, but we wish he \_\_\_\_.

9. They wanted me to go to the office immediately, but I wish I \_\_\_\_.

10. He can't play basketball well, but he wishes he \_\_\_\_.

11. Hulya couldn't get the job. I wish \_\_\_\_.

12. I am not intelligent. I wish \_\_\_\_.

13. I am sorry that I don't know Russian. I wish \_\_\_\_.

14. I am very poor. I wish \_\_\_\_.

15. I can't swim well. I wish \_\_\_\_.

16. I haven't got a car. I wish \_\_\_\_.

17. I wasn't at home last night. I wish \_\_\_\_.

18. If I were an adult, I could drive a car. I wish \_\_\_\_.

---

19. If only he would be here on time. I wish\_\_\_\_\_.

---

20. If only I hadn't said it at the time. I wish\_\_\_\_\_.

---

21. If only I were rich. I wish\_\_\_\_\_.

---

22. Jim is sorry that Jane isn't coming with them. He wishes\_\_\_\_\_.

---

23. My deskmate would like to be able to play football every day. He wishes\_\_\_\_\_.

---

24. My father will go to Germany. I wish\_\_\_\_\_.

---

## WISH CLAUSE

Make sentences using *wish*.

Examples:

My father **is not** here now.

*I wish he were here now.*

I **can't** speak German.

*I wish I could speak German.*

I **didn't** pass my exam.

*I wish I had passed my exam.*

1. I don't have a car.

---

2. My bicycle is very old.

---

3. The teacher speaks very fast.  
4. We don't live in a large house.  
5. I can't run fast.  
6. They won't be able to come.  
7. I have to work hard.  
8. They didn't help me.  
9. The boss didn't give me a rise.  
10. I lost my dictionary.  
11. The questions were very difficult.  
12. They couldn't catch the murderer.  
13. My mother-in-law doesn't like me.  
14. The train is late.  
15. They closed the library.  
16. We couldn't find the missing child.  
17. My father smokes a lot.  
18. I will have to stay in bed for two weeks.  
19. They didn't finish the job.  
20. They painted the house white.  
21. He is very poor.  
22. He wasn't careful and he broke the vase.  
23. They didn't finish the building.  
24. I sold my car.

## WISH CLAUSE – Asking Questions

*Answer the questions.*

1. He isn't clever. What do his parents wish?
2. "I can't wake up early." What does Mary wish?
3. Murat had to buy a used car. What does he wish?

---

4. "We haven't got a color TV." What do they wish?

---

5. "I can't afford to buy a house." What does Mr. Brown wish?

---

6. "She isn't an ambitious girl." What does her mother wish?

---

## WISH - IF ONLY

**Expressing a wish:** If only / I wish + simple past

**Use:**

- To express a wish in the present or in the future.
- The simple past here is an unreal past.
- When you use the verb to be the form is "were".

**Example:**

I wish I were a millionaire!

If only I knew how to use a computer. (I don't know how to use a computer and I would like to learn how to use it)

**Expressing regret:** If only / I wish + past perfect

Example:

If only I had woken up early. (I didn't wake up early and I missed my bus.)

**Complaining:** I wish / if only + would + verb

Example:

I wish you wouldn't arrive so late all the time (I'm annoyed because you always come late and I want you to arrive on time)

Use:

- To complain about a behaviour that you disapprove.
- Expressing impatience, annoyance or dissatisfaction with a present action.

Write sentences with "I WISH....." and "IF ONLY.....":

1. Ayşe isn't here.

I wish \_\_\_\_\_

2. She lives in İstanbul (and she hates it).

She wishes \_\_\_\_\_

3. He can't give up smoking.

He wishes \_\_\_\_\_

If only \_\_\_\_\_

4. I'm not lying on a beautiful sunny beach (and that's a pity).

I wish \_\_\_\_\_

If only \_\_\_\_\_

5. They don't know anything about cars (and their car has just been broken down).

They wish \_\_\_\_\_

6. He has pneumonia.

He wishes \_\_\_\_\_

If only \_\_\_\_\_

7. She has to work tomorrow (but she'd like to stay in bed).

She wishes \_\_\_\_\_

8. There is going to be an examination tomorrow.

If only \_\_\_\_\_

9. My brother doesn't keep his room tidy.

I wish \_\_\_\_\_

10. Sue doesn't help with the housework.

Sue's mother wishes \_\_\_\_\_

11. Mary often plays the piano in the middle of the night.

Her neighbors wish \_\_\_\_\_

## WISH - IF ONLY

1. He wishes he \_\_ (buy) that book last week – now he hasn't got enough money.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. He wishes he \_\_ (visit) them, but he can't.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. I wish I \_\_ (be) in the United States now.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. I wish I    (have) today off.

---

5. I wish I    had met    (meet) that actor when he was in town.

---

6. I wish I    . (can / remember) where that book is.

---

7. I wish I    (have) yesterday off.

---

8. I wish this box    (not / be) so heavy – I can't lift it.

---

9. If only he    (not / eat) so much garlic last night!

---

10. If only he    (not / eat) so much garlic!

---

11. If only I    (know) the answer a few minutes ago.

---

12. If only I    (know) the answer now.

---

13. If only I    (be) older, I could have a driving licence.

---

14. If only I    (not / make) that mistake yesterday.

---

15. If only the dog    (not / eat) the tickets – now we can't go to the show.

---

16. Mrs. Brown wishes she    (write) those letters yesterday.

---

17. Paula wishes she    (have) more time for gardening, but she hasn't.

---

18. She wishes she    (clean) it yesterday.

---

19. She wishes she    (clean) the refrigerator today.

---

20. Tony wishes he    (go) to Paris with his brother, but he has to work.

---

21. We wish we    not / leave) the gate open. Now the dog has escaped.

---

## WHAT IF....?

Ask questions. (WAT IF...?)

*Example: If don't study lesson, I won't pass my exam.*

*What if I don't pass my exam?*

1. If I miss the school bus, I'll get on the train.

---

2. If she were in Izmir, she would visit her relatives.

---

3. If you aren't careful, you'll make a lot of mistakes.

---

4. If I lost my way in a crowded place, I'd ask the police for it.

---

---

5. If he asked me to help him do his homework, I wouldn't accept it.

---

## WHAT IF....? Answer Questions

*Answer the questions.*

1. What if you feel ill?

---
2. What if you broke the teacher's glasses?

---
3. What if you were punished by your mother?

---
4. What if you are given an expensive present by your friend?

---
5. What if it rained a lot yesterday?

---
6. What if you failed in Geography test?

---
7. What if you oversleep before you finish your homework?

---
8. What if the weather were cold yesterday?

---
9. What if your father didn't give you your pocket money yesterday?

---
10. What if you won a lot of money on the lottery?

---
11. What if you inherited a fortune unexpectedly?

---
12. What if you get fat?

---
13. What if you run out of petrol?

---
14. What if your money was stolen?

---
15. What if you were seen while cheating?

---
16. What if you were rich?

---
17. What if you were the President of your country?

---
18. What if you don't have any money to pay for the bus?

---
19. What if your father were appointed to a better job in London?

---
20. What if there were life on the other planets?

---

## CAUSATIVES (*get* and *have*)

*Make sentences using get or have as in the example. Use the correct forms of the verbs.*

**Examples:** I - my house - paint - every year.

I get my house painted every year.

He - his photograph - take - yesterday.

He had his photograph taken yesterday.

1. She - her radio - repair - last week

---

2. I - my shoes - polish - this evening

---

3. He - his car - wash - every week

4. She - her hair - do - tonight

5. He - his trousers - mend - tomorrow

6. They - just - their clothes - clean

7. I - my car - service - yesterday

8. I - my hair - cut - now

9. The boss - the letter - type - ten minutes ago

10. I - must - this letter - translate

11. We - the house - redecorate - next week

12. They - already - the furniture - move

13. She - her car - polish - now

14. He - his teeth - check - every year

15. He - his trousers - shorten - yesterday

16. The boss - the documents - photocopy - a little while ago

17. She - her skirt - lengthen - tomorrow

18. They - the floors - clean - every week

19. He - must - his car - paint

20. He - not - his piano - tune - yet

21. He - has to - his fridge - repair?

22. I - had to - the rooms - empty

23. I - a bookcase - make - next week

24. She - her umbrella - mend - yesterday

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES - UNLESS

**Example:** You can't swim in this pool without having a shower. (unless)

— You can't swim in this pool unless you have a shower.

1. You mustn't park your car because it is forbidden. (unless)

2. You can go out of the classroom if your teacher lets you. (unless)

3. You'll be fined if you don't stop at the red light. (unless)

4. I won't buy this car if you don't let me drive it. (unless)

5. You can go in if you are allowed to. (unless)

---

6. You can't buy anything without paying for it. (unless)

---

7. I won't go for a walk if you don't come. (unless)

---

8. You'll get lost if you don't follow the instructions on the map. (unless)

---

9. You can't play football without having a ball. (unless)

---

10. You must study hard if you want to learn English. (unless)

---

11. You must have glasses not to get any harm from X-Rays. (unless)

---

12. You can't get on a train without having a ticket. (unless)

---

13. If you don't go to Venice, you will never ride in a gondola. (unless)

---

14. If it doesn't rain, we will go to the cinema. (unless)

---

15. If you don't go to a Chinese restaurant, you'll never taste a Peking Duck. (unless)

---

16. If you don't go to Bursa, you'll never climb Uludag. (unless)

---

17. If you don't go to India, you'll never see Taj Mahal. (unless)

---

18. If you don't answer my question, I won't go anywhere. (unless)

---

19. I won't let you go if you don't give me my money back. (unless)

---

20. I'll call the police if you don't go away. (unless)

---

21. If you don't complain the manager, you'll always get bad service. (unless)

---

22. If you don't have enough money, you can't buy this car. (unless)

---

23. You won't catch the bus if you don't leave immediately. (unless)

---

24. You can't learn English if you don't practice regularly. (unless)

---

## WITHOUT

Rewrite the sentences by using **without**.

Example: I'll probably get a good mark if I study harder. (without)

I'll probably get a good mark **without studying** harder.

1. She can't sing well if she doesn't rehearse. (without)

---

2. She must have a ticket if she wants to get on the bus. (without)

---

3. You can't be a successful student unless you study hard. (without)

---

4. You can't have a driving license if you don't pass the driving test. (without)

---

5. You'll feel better if you take this pill. (without)

---

## AFTER/BEFORE V+ING

Rewrite the sentences by using **after -Ving**

1. You must turn off the lights before you leave the room. (after + Ving)

---

2. Before I telephoned you, I finished all the housework. (after + ing)

---

3. He had locked his safe before he went to bed. (after + ing)

---

4. You must turn off the lights before you leave the room. (before + Ving)

---

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES: UNLESS / WITHOUT / IF / BEFORE V+ING / AFTER V+ING / WHILE V+ING

*Complete the sentences.*

Example: You can't get a job **unless** you've got experience \_\_\_\_.

1. We'll go shopping **unless** \_\_\_\_.

---

2. You \_\_\_\_ **unless** you get frightened.

---

3. You can watch the film on TV **if** \_\_\_\_.

---

4. You can't \_\_\_\_ **unless** you have a driving license.

---

5. I can't wake up on time **unless** \_\_\_\_.

---

6. We'll go for a picnic **unless** \_\_\_\_.

---

7. You can't get a good job **unless** \_\_\_\_.

---

8. He \_\_\_\_ **unless** he is well-behaved.

---

9. You \_\_\_\_ **unless** being invited to.

---

10. You'll be hungry later **unless** \_\_\_\_.

---

11. I won't help you **unless** \_\_\_\_.

---

12. You must \_\_\_\_ **while** riding a motorbike.

---

13. You can \_\_\_\_ **after** cleaning your desk.

---

14. If they don't invite me to their party, \_\_\_\_.

---

15. The teacher will get angry \_\_\_\_.

---

16. You mustn't leave your room **without** \_\_\_\_.

---

17. You can't go out **without** \_\_\_\_.

---

# SO / NOR = NEITHER

Complete the sentences.

**Example:** Tina likes going swimming. So does Sally.

1. I can't play the piano. Nor my brother.
2. I know him very well. So Kate.
3. I'm not going to school tomorrow. Nor Ayse.
4. I haven't got any money. my friend.
5. I'm tired. my friends.
6. I've never been to England. my parents.
7. A: I can swim well. B: I.
8. A: I don't like watching TV at nights. B: I.
9. A: I have to get up early every morning. B: I.
10. A: I visited my uncle yesterday. B: I.
11. A: I'm thirsty. B: I.
12. A: I must be at school by nine. B: I.
13. A: I don't enjoy eating at home. B: I.
14. I didn't buy anything yesterday. my friend.
15. My father went to work early this morning. my mother.
16. My mother doesn't like cold weather. I
17. I watched TV last night. my Family.
18. She hasn't got any money. her designate.
19. I was invited to the party. all my friends.
20. They all look like happy. we.
21. Kaka is a good footballer. Okan.
22. Ann can't type fast. Kate.
23. My classmates study English hard. the students in other classes.
24. A: I have lived in Sinop for six years. B: I.

## ...EITHER.... OR...

Make sentences with ...either...or...

**Example:** You can give me your book. Or your friend can give me his book.

You can give me either your book or his book (your friend's book).

1. I can leave now. Or I can stay for another an hour.

---

2. The boss is flying to Atlanta. Or his assistant is flying to Atlanta.

---

3. We can stay at home. Or we can go out.

---

4. He is from France. Or he is from England.

---

5. We can visit them today. Or we can visit them tomorrow.

---

6. He must apologize. Or I won't speak to him anymore.

---

7. Is your name Kate? Or is your name Jane?

---

8. You may do these exercises now. Or you may do them later.

---

9. You can turn on the TV. Or you can turn on the radio.

---

10. You can have meat for dinner. Or you can have fish later.

---

11. You can spend your holiday in Bodrum. Or you can spend it in Marmaris.

---

12. I must spend less. Or I must earn more.

---

13. The door must be closed. Or the window must be closed.

---

14. You can have tea. Or you can have coffee.

---

15. I can see you on Saturday. Or I can see you on Sunday.

---

16. You can write with a pen. Or you can write with a pencil.

---

17. Mustafa will be at home tonight. Or his brother will be at home tonight.

---

18. We are going to the cinema now. Or we are going to the theatre now.

---

19. Could you give me Rita's address? Or could you give me her telephone number?

---

## NEITHER ... NOR....

*Make sentences with ..neither...nor....*

1. Edward doesn't like listening to music. Mary doesn't like listening to music.

---

2. Hilda didn't telephone me last night. Nor did Janet.

---

3. Judy hasn't left yet. Jane hasn't left yet.

---

4. Clint didn't come to the party. Gary didn't, either.

---

5. Karen isn't tall. Mandy isn't, either.

---

6. Felix can't speak Turkish. His friend can't speak Turkish, either.

---

7. My brother doesn't know how to use this machine. I don't know, either.

---

8. Sunday isn't the first day of this month. It isn't the second day, either.

---

9. My son doesn't like swimming. He doesn't like playing football, either.

---

10. My deskmate can't play the flute well. Neither can I.

---

11. Juliet isn't at home. Patricia isn't, either.

---

12. My uncle didn't write. He didn't telephone, either.

---

13. I don't like tea or coffee.

---

14. Paul didn't come to school yesterday. Kevin didn't come to school yesterday.

---

15. I haven't got any time to go to Ankara. I haven't got the money.

---

16. My father doesn't smoke and he doesn't drink any alcoholic drinks.

---

17. He can't speak French or English.

---

18. Mrs. Brown wasn't at home when I phoned. Nor was Mr. Brown.

---

19. We couldn't help Kate. And we couldn't help Jane.

---

20. I haven't seen Oliver for ages. I haven't seen Martin for ages.

---

## BOTH ... AND ...

*Make sentences with **both...and...***

1. I can play the guitar. I can play the piano.

---

2. My brother went to Moscow and my sister went to Moscow, too.

---

3. Oranges are grown in Adana and they are grown in Mersin, too.

---

4. I can speak English. So can my daughter.

---

5. I spoke to Tim. I spoke to Tom.

---

6. I like pop music. I like classical music.

---

7. There is some vitamin C in this fruit juice. There is some vitamin D, too.

8. My deskmate is clever. He is hardworking.

9. The boys are dancing. They are singing songs.

10. Kate can do the housework. She can cook.

11. Mehmet is absent today. Ali is absent, too.

12. I like watching TV and listening to the radio.

13. Swimming is enjoyable. It is useful for our fitness.

14. I can write fast. I can type fast.

15. Kate forgot the date. Kim forgot the date.

16. Mick's father grows vegetables on his farm. He grows fruit, too.

17. This tool is very useful and it is easy to keep in your pocket.

18. Our director is hardworking and clever.

## ...SO...THAT... / ...SUCH... THAT...

Complete the following sentences.

Example: He is **so** tired **that** he doesn't want to school.

1. a) I am so ill that \_\_\_\_\_.

b) They are such important rules that \_\_\_\_\_.

2. a) \_\_\_\_\_ that nobody likes to meet him.

b) \_\_\_\_\_ that everybody wants to meet him.

3. a) It was such a hot day that \_\_\_\_\_.

b) \_\_\_\_\_ that I couldn't solve them.

4. a) He was such a rich man that \_\_\_\_\_.  
b) It was such hot tea that \_\_\_\_\_.

5. a) He behaves us so friendly that \_\_\_\_\_.  
b) The room was so dark that \_\_\_\_\_.

6. a) It was such a high building that \_\_\_\_\_.  
b) He is so tall that \_\_\_\_\_.

7. a) \_\_\_\_\_ that she couldn't read it.  
b) \_\_\_\_\_ that he couldn't drink it.

8. a) There were so many people in the street that \_\_\_\_\_.  
b) He drank so much fruit juice that \_\_\_\_\_.

9. a) My father is so hardworking that \_\_\_\_\_.  
b) She is such an helpful girl that \_\_\_\_\_.

## DETERMINERS

### TOO – ENOUGH

Put in TOO or ENOUGH:

Example: You're always at home. You don't go out ..... enough. ....

1. I can't wait for them. I haven't got \_\_\_\_ time.

2. You're always tired. I think you work \_\_\_\_ hard.

3. A: Did you have \_\_\_\_ to eat? B: Yes, thank you.

4. You don't eat \_\_\_\_ vegetables. You should eat more.

5. I don't like the weather here. It's \_\_\_\_ cold.

6. The radio isn't loud \_\_\_\_\_. Can you turn it up, please?

7. She speaks \_\_\_\_\_. fast for me to understand.

8. Don't buy that coat. It's nice but it isn't long \_\_\_\_.

9. He can't reach the shelf. He isn't tall \_\_\_\_.

## TOO / ENOUGH

Combine the following sentences using **too** or **enough**.

**Example:** The tea is very hot. I can't drink it.

The tea is **too** hot (for me) to drink.

The questions were easy. He answered them.

The questions were **easy enough** (for him) to answer.

1. The suitcases are very heavy. I can't carry them.

2. The water was too cold. I couldn't drink it.

3. I am very busy. I can't play football today.

4. This story is interesting. I can read it.

5. The bracelet was cheap. Mary bought it.

6. I am very tired. I can't work any more.  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. Mr. Smith is rich. He can buy a plane.  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. The car was going very fast. It couldn't stop in time.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. The lake was very deep. They couldn't swim there.  
\_\_\_\_\_

10. The bar was very high. The athlete couldn't jump over it.  
\_\_\_\_\_

11. He isn't very intelligent. He can't solve this problem.  
\_\_\_\_\_

12. The suitcase is very light. I can carry it.  
\_\_\_\_\_

13. He ran slowly. He couldn't catch the bus.  
\_\_\_\_\_

14. He is very tall. He can play basketball.  
\_\_\_\_\_

15. I am very short. I can't touch the lamp.  
\_\_\_\_\_

16. I am very hungry. I can eat a whole chicken.  
\_\_\_\_\_

17. Ali is very strong. He can beat a bull.  
\_\_\_\_\_

18. The weather is too cold. We can't go swimming.  
\_\_\_\_\_

19. My uncle is very old. We can't play football.  
\_\_\_\_\_

20. This exercise is very difficult. I can't do it.  
\_\_\_\_\_

21. The student is very clever. He understands physics easily.  
\_\_\_\_\_

22. The soup was very salty. I couldn't eat it.  
\_\_\_\_\_

23. The instructions were clear. I understood them.  
\_\_\_\_\_

24. The weather was very dark. I couldn't see anything.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## DETERMINERS - TOO MANY / TOO FEW / TOO MUCH / TOO LITTLE / ENOUGH

Fill in the blanks with **TOO MANY / TOO FEW / TOO MUCH / TOO LITTLE / ENOUGH**.

Example: There are\_\_too many\_\_cars in Istanbul.

1. There is\_\_ milk in the bottle; it isn't\_\_for the baby.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. There isn't\_\_public transport in Turkiye.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I can't study in the classroom, sir. There is\_\_noise there.  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. There are \_\_\_ old players in the team.

5. I can't see well; there isn't \_\_\_ light.

6. Nobody likes him; he talks \_\_\_.

7. Do we have \_\_\_ money to pay for it?

8. There are \_\_\_ students at this school; it is about 65.

9. I didn't have \_\_\_ water, so I couldn't give any to the animals.

10. I can't go to the theatre with you tonight; I have got \_\_\_ work to do.

11. There are \_\_\_ apples in the basket, so you needn't buy any.

12. I've got \_\_\_ money in my purse; I can't buy any food.

# NOUN CLAUSES

## 1- NOUN CLAUSES: INTRODUCTION

A noun is used as a subject or an object.

A noun clause is used as a subject or an object. In other words a noun clause is used in the same ways as a noun.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) <b>His story</b> was interesting.    | In (a): <b>story</b> is a noun. It is used as the subject of the sentence.   |
| (b) <b>What he said</b> was interesting. | In (b): <b>what he said</b> is a noun clause. It is used as the subject of the sentence. The noun clause has its own subject ( <b>he</b> ) and verb ( <b>said</b> ). |
| (c) I heard <b>his story</b> .           | In (c): <b>story</b> is a noun. It is used as the object of the verb <b>heard</b> .  |
| (d) I heard <b>what he said</b> .        | In (d): <b>what he said</b> is a noun clause. It is used as the object of the verb <b>heard</b> .  |

### WORDS USED TO INTRODUCE NOUN CLAUSES

(1) question words:

when who where whom whose  
why what how which

(2) **whether**

**if**

(3) **that**

## 2- NOUN CLAUSES WHICH BEGIN WITH A QUESTION WORD

| QUESTION  | NOUN CLAUSE  |  |
|---|--|--|
| Where does she live?  | (a) I don't know <b>where she lives</b> .  | In (a): <b>where she lives</b> is the object of the verb <b>know</b> . Do not use question word order in a noun clause. In a noun clause, the subject precedes the verb. |
| What did he say?  | (b) I couldn't hear <b>what he said</b> .  | Notice: <b>does</b> , <b>did</b> , and <b>do</b> are used in questions but not in noun clauses.  |
| When do they arrive?  | (c) Do you know <b>when they arrive</b> ?  |  |
| <b>s v</b><br>Who lives there?<br>What happened?<br>Who is at the door? | <b>s v</b><br>(d) I don't know <b>who lives there</b> .<br>(e) Please tell me <b>what happened</b> .<br>(f) I wonder <b>who is at the door</b> . | In (d): The word order is the same in both the question and the noun clause because <b>who</b> is the subject in both.   |
| <b>v s</b><br>Who is she?<br>Who are those men?<br>Whose house is that? | <b>s v</b><br>(g) I don't know <b>who she is</b> .<br>(h) I don't know <b>who those men are</b> .<br>(i) I wonder <b>whose house that is</b> .   | In (g): <b>she</b> is the subject of the question, so it is placed in front of the verb <b>be</b> in the noun clause.*   |
| What did she say?<br>What should they do?                               | (j) <b>What she said</b> surprised me.<br>(k) <b>What they should do</b> is obvious.   | In (j): <b>what she said</b> is the subject of the sentence. Notice in (k): A noun clause subject takes a singular verb. (e.g., <b>is</b> ).                             |

## 3- NOUN CLAUSES WHICH BEGIN WITH WHETHER OR IF

| YES/NO QUESTION    | NOUN CLAUSE   |  |
|--------------------|---|--|
| Will she come?     | (a) I don't know <b>whether she will come</b> .<br>I don't know <b>if she will come</b> .   | When a yes/no question is changed to a noun clause, <b>whether</b> or <b>if</b> is used to introduce the clause.   |
| Does he need help? | (b) I wonder <b>whether he needs help</b> .<br>I wonder <b>if he needs help</b> .<br>(c) I wonder <b>whether or not</b> she will come.<br>(d) I wonder <b>whether</b> she will come or not.<br>(e) I wonder <b>if</b> she will come <b>or not</b> . | (Note: <b>whether</b> is more acceptable in formal English, but <b>if</b> is quite commonly used, especially in speaking.)<br>In (c), (d), and (e): Notice the patterns when <b>or not</b> used. |
|                    | (f) <b>Whether she comes or not</b> is unimportant to me.   | In (f): Notice that the noun clause is in the subject position.  |

## 4- QUESTION WORDS FOLLOWED BY INFINITIVES

|  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) I don't know <b>what I should do</b> .<br>(b) I don't know <b>what to do</b> .<br>(c) Pam can't decide <b>whether she should go or stay home</b> .<br>(d) Pam can't decide <b>whether to go or (to) stay home</b> .<br>(e) Please tell me <b>how I can get to the bus station</b> .<br>(f) Please tell me <b>how to get to the bus station</b> .<br>(g) Jim told us <b>where we could find it</b> .<br>(h) Jim told us <b>where to find it</b> . | Question words ( <b>when, where, how, who, whom, whose, what, which</b> ) and <b>whether</b> may be followed by an infinitive.<br>Each pair of sentences in the examples has the same meaning. Notice that the meaning expressed by the infinitive is either <b>should</b> or <b>can/could</b> . |
|--|--|

## 5- NOUN CLAUSES WHICH BEGIN WITH THAT

| STATEMENT   | NOUN CLAUSE  |  |
|---|--|--|
| (Expression of an idea or fact)                               |  |  |
| He is a good actor.   | (a) I think <b>that he is a good actor</b> .<br>(b) I think <b>he is a good actor</b> .  | In (a): <b>that he is a good actor</b> is a noun clause. It is used as the object of the verb <b>think</b> .<br>The word <b>that</b> , when it introduces a noun clause, has no meaning in itself. It simply marks the beginning of the clause. Frequently it is omitted, as in (b), especially in speaking. (If used in speaking, it is unstressed.)  |
| The world is round.   | (c) We know <b>(that) the world is round</b> .   |  |
| She doesn't understand spoken English.<br>The world is round. | (d) <b>That she doesn't understand spoken English</b> is obvious.<br>(e) <b>It</b> is obvious <b>(that) she doesn't understand spoken English</b> .<br>(f) <b>That the world is round</b> is a fact.<br>(g) <b>It</b> is a fact <b>that the world is round</b> . | In (d): The noun clause ( <b>That she doesn't understand spoken English</b> ) is used as the subject of the sentence. The word <b>that</b> is not omitted when it introduces a noun clause used as the subject of a sentence, as in (d) and (f).<br>More commonly, the word <b>it</b> functions as the subject, and the noun clause is placed at the end of the sentence, as in (e) and (g). |

## 6- QUOTED SPEECH\*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Quoted speech refers to reproducing words exactly as they were originally spoken.<br>Quotation marks ("...") are used.              |   |
| <b>QUOTING ONE SENTENCE</b>   |   |
| (a) She said, "My brother is a student."<br>(b) "My brother is a student," she said.<br>(c) "My brother," she said, "is a student." | In (a): Use a comma after <b>she said</b> . Capitalize the first word of the quoted sentence. Put the final quotation marks outside of the period at the end of the sentence.<br>In (b): Use a comma, not a period, at the end of the quoted sentence when it precedes <b>she said</b> .<br>In (c): If the quoted sentence is divided by <b>she said</b> , use a comma after the first part of the quote. Do not capitalize the first word of the second half of the quoted sentence. |
| <b>QUOTING MORE THAN ONE SENTENCE</b>   | In (d): Quotation marks are placed at the beginning and end of the complete quote. Notice: There are no quotation marks after <b>student</b> .  |
| (d) "My brother is a student. He is attending a university," she said.  |   |
| <b>QUOTING A QUESTION OR AN EXCLAMATION</b>   | In (e): The question mark is inside the quotation marks.<br>In (f): If a question mark is used, no comma is used before she asked.<br>In (g): The exclamation point is inside the quotation marks.  |
| (e) She asked, "When will you be here?"<br>(f) "When will you be here?" she asked.<br>(g) She said, "Watch out!"                    |   |

# NOUN CLAUSES

Combine the sentences.

**Example:** Are you tired of doing homework all day long? I want to know.

I want to know **whether/if** you are tired of doing homework.

1. Can you type fast? I'd like to know.

2. Did you invite her to your birthday party? I want to know.

3. Did you watch TV last night? Tell me.

4. Do you know why he hasn't called you? I'd like to know.

5. Do you like being a student at this school? I wonder.

6. Do you like chocolate cake? I'd like to know.

7. Do you like playing football? I want to know.

8. Do you think you could help me? I wonder.

9. Has he signed the contract yet? I have no idea.

10. Has she had breakfast yet? Do you know?

11. Have they got any problems? I am not sure.

12. Have you passed the test? I want to know.

13. How do people spend their time in your hometown? Can you tell me?

14. How do you come to school on rainy days? Can you tell me?

15. How fast is your car? Can you tell me?

16. How many cigarettes does your father smoke every day? I don't know.

17. How many cities are there in Turkiye? Could you tell me it?

18. How often does Mr. Brown take his family abroad? Do you know?

19. How old is John's brother? I have no idea. ?

**20.** How old is your English teacher? Do you know

---

**21.** I wonder. Where is he from?

---

**22.** Is there anyone at the door? I don't know.

---

**23.** One of your English teachers went abroad last month. Do you know why?

---

**24.** Were you at home last night? I'd like to know.

---

**25.** What are they going to do tomorrow? No one knows.

---

**26.** What are you doing at the moment? She wants to know.

---

**27.** What did the teacher say? Tell me.

---

**28.** What did your mother do when she saw you? I wonder.

---

**29.** What do you want me to do for you? I wonder.

---

**30.** What does my son want to be? I have no idea.

---

**31.** What does your deskmate want? I'd like to know.

---

**32.** What does your uncle do in his free time? Do you know?

---

**33.** What happened last night? Could you tell me?

---

**34.** What happened this morning? I wonder.

---

**35.** What have you decided? Could you tell me?

---

**36.** What is that teacher's surname? I have no idea.

---

**37.** What is that? Who can tell me?

---

**38.** What is your new English teacher like? Who knows that?

---

**39.** What time are the guests leaving? Can you tell me?

---

**40.** What time did the film start? Can you tell me?

**41.** What time does that shop close? Do you know?

---

**42.** What time does the last train come? I have no idea.

---

**43.** What time is it? I don't know.

---

**44.** What would you like to have for dinner? Tell me.

---

**45.** What's happening over there? I have no idea.

---

**46.** Where can I find some old coins? Could you please tell me?

---

**47.** Where did you go? I want to know.

---

**48.** Where do the students in your school have lunch? I want to know.

---

**49.** Where do you live? Tell me.

---

**50.** Where does your deskmate's father work? Do you know?

---

**51.** Where does your uncle live? Could you tell me?

---

**52.** Where have you been for the last two days? I want to know.

---

**53.** Where is the teacher? Do you know?

---

**54.** Which boy was punished by his father this morning? Could you tell me?

---

**55.** Who did your homework? I wonder.

---

**56.** Who took my pen? I wonder.

---

**57.** Who was carrying the suitcases when you arrived? Can you tell me?

---

**58.** Who's at the door? I wonder.

---

**59.** Whose car is in front of the house? Can you tell me?

---

**60.** Whose chair is that? Do you know?

---

**61.** Why are you smiling? I wonder.

---

62. Why didn't you come to the party? I wonder.

---

63. Why has he left so early? I wonder.

---

64. Why were you late for school yesterday? I want to know.

---

65. Will there be another coach tonight? Do you think?

---

66. Will there be any air pollution after the fire? No one knows.

---

67. Will you go to the party? Can you tell me?

---

## ARTICLES

### ARTICLES (a-an-the)

*Fill in the blanks with A, AN or THE if necessary.*

1. \_\_Amazon River is\_\_widest river in the world.

---

2. \_\_coffee comes from\_\_Brazil.

---

3. \_\_Denmark is\_\_very rich country.

4. English drink a lot of tea.

5. English is more difficult than German.

6. exercises in this book are very difficult.

7. good book is always better than bad friend.

8. Great Wall of China is very famous all over world.

9. last bus is at 10:06 p.m.

10. London is in middle of England.

11. Mississippi is the longest river in world.

12. Pittsburgh is big city.

13. Queen of England lives in Buckingham Palace in London.

14. Richard is student at high school.

15. tea is grown in Sri Lanka.

16. Buy some milk when you go out.

17. Do you always drink coffee with milk?

18. He is no longer friend of mine.

19. He says poor get poorer.

20. He was helping old people when I saw him.

21. I asked her question about her job.

22. I bought new umbrella yesterday.

23. I can type hundred words in minute.

24. I must buy new jacket.

25. I play\_\_guitar well.

26. I'm\_\_hardworking.

27. Is there\_\_high school in your village?

28. I've got\_\_oranges but my brother has got\_\_only one.

29. Last night there was\_\_terrible storm.

30. My cat is\_\_same color as yours.

31. My deskmate is\_\_very naughty boy.

32. Our country needs\_\_hardworking and\_\_honest people.

33. Please open\_\_windows.

34. She works as\_\_teacher.

35. Tell me\_\_interesting story.

36. That is\_\_very unusual dress.

37. There are\_\_books and\_\_pencil on the table.

38. There is\_\_cat on\_\_teacher's table.

39. They are\_\_books.

40. This is\_\_first time I have ever ridden motorbike.

41. Those men are\_\_firemen.

42. We are from\_\_Munich in\_\_Germany.

43. We didn't meet\_\_last week.

44. We learn about\_\_United States at\_\_school.

45. We need\_\_uniform to go to school in some countries.

---

46. What \_\_ hot day!

---

47. What's \_\_ capital of \_\_ Netherlands?

---

48. Who is \_\_ best footballer in \_\_ world?

---

49. Would you like \_\_ cup of coffee?

---

# ADJECTIVE

a couple

a few

a handful

a little

a lot of

a number of

a quantity of

absent

absent-minded, confused

absolute

accidental

active

actual

adaptable

advanced

adventurous

aggressive

agreed

air headed

alert

alive

all-embracing

alone

always must be right

amazing

ambitious

angry

annoyed

annoying

arrogant

astonishing

|               |                     |                    |
|---------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| athletic      | crazy               | familiar           |
| attractive    | crazy               | famous             |
| awkward       | creative            | fanciful           |
| bad           | credible believable | fantastic          |
| beautiful     | critical            | far                |
| biased        | crooked             | fascinating        |
| big           | cruel               | fascinating        |
| bizarre       | curious             | fast               |
| boring        | customary           | fat                |
| boundless     | cute                | fatty              |
| bountiful     | dangerous           | feeling good       |
| bright        | dead                | fine               |
| brilliant     | deadly              | finicky            |
| broad         | dear                | first-class        |
| bushy         | deceitful           | fit                |
| calm          | dedicated           | flexible decent    |
| carefree      | deep                | flipped-out        |
| careful       | definite            | fragile            |
| careless      | delicate            | free               |
| caring        | demented            | frequent           |
| caustic       | dense               | friendly           |
| certain       | dependable          | full amount        |
| certainly     | dependant           | funny              |
| changing      | depressed           | fussy              |
| cheap         | depressing          | general            |
| cheerful      | desperate           | generous           |
| childish      | detestable          | genius             |
| childlike     | different           | giant              |
| classified    | difficult           | gifted             |
| classy        | dirty               | gigantic           |
| clean         | dirty               | glum               |
| clever        | disgusting          | good               |
| closed        | disgusting          | good charming      |
| clueless      | disobedient         | grateful           |
| coarse        | dumb                | great              |
| cold          | easy                | greedy             |
| comfortable   | eccentric           | gross              |
| committed     | educated            | gross              |
| common        | egotistical         | half               |
| compact       | elegant             | handsome           |
| complete      | elegant             | happy              |
| complicated   | embarrassed         | hard               |
| comprehensive | embarrassing        | hard-headed        |
| concealed     | enlightened         | hard-working       |
| conceited     | enormous            | harsh              |
| confidential  | enthusiastic        | harsh              |
| confused      | entire              | has much character |
| conservative  | entirety            | haughty            |
| considerate   | envious             | healthy            |
| consistent    | exact               | heartless          |
| content       | exacting            | heavy              |
| controlled    | excited             | heavy              |
| cool          | expensive           | helpful            |
| cool          | express             | high               |
| cool          | extensive           | honest             |
| correct       | fabulous            | hospitable         |
| courageous    | fair                | hot                |
| cowardly      | faithful            | huge               |

|                |               |                |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| huge           | many          | popular        |
| humble         | marvelous     | practical      |
| hungry         | massive       | precise        |
| idealistic     | mature        | pretty         |
| ignorant       | mean          | pretty,        |
| ignorant       | melancholic   | privileged     |
| imaginary      | melancholy    | profuse        |
| imperfect      | merry         | proper         |
| impolite       | messy         | proper crazy   |
| important      | microscopic   | proud          |
| in a good mood | miniature     | proud (of)     |
| in doubt       | minor         | psyched        |
| inadequate     | miserable     | public         |
| incalculable   | mistrustful   | punctual       |
| incomplete     | mocking       | quick funny    |
| inconsiderate  | modern        | quiet          |
| incredible     | monumental    | radical        |
| independent    | moody         | rare           |
| individual     | moral         | reasonable     |
| industrious    | much          | rebellious     |
| inevitable     | musical       | refined        |
| inexpensive    | narrow        | refined        |
| inexperienced  | narrow-minded | relaxed        |
| inflexible     | near          | relaxed modest |
| innocent       | nervous       | reliable       |
| insane         | new           | religious      |
| intelligent    | nice          | remarkable     |
| interesting    | nice          | reserve        |
| intolerant     | nit-picky     | reserved       |
| irrelevant     | normal        | responsible    |
| irresistible   | not clean     | restricted     |
| jealous        | not public    | revolutionary  |
| just           | numerous      | rich           |
| kind           | old-fashioned | right          |
| large          | on time       | romantic       |
| late           | open          | roomy          |
| lazy           | open-minded   | rough          |
| lean           | optimistic    | rude           |
| liberal        | orderly       | rude           |
| lightweight    | ordinary      | sad            |
| likable        | outgoing      | safe           |
| likely         | overall       | satisfied      |
| limited        | partial       | saucy          |
| little         | particular    | secret         |
| lively         | passionate    | secure         |
| living         | passive       | selected       |
| lonely         | patient       | self-centered  |
| long           | personal      | self-confident |
| loud           | pessimistic   | sensible       |
| lovable        | petty         | sensitive      |
| lovely         | picky         | sensitive      |
| loves to argue | plain         | separate       |
| low            | pleasant      | serious        |
| loyal          | plentiful     | serious        |
| lucky          | plump, chubby | several        |
| magnificent    | polite        | shallow        |
| magnificent    | poor          | shallow        |
| making fun of  | poor          | shared         |

|                |             |                      |
|----------------|-------------|----------------------|
| sheer          | stubborn    | unpredictable        |
| short          | stuck up    | unreserved           |
| shy            | stupid      | unselfish            |
| sick           | stylish     | unskillful           |
| simple         | stylish     | unstable             |
| simply         | substantial | untroubled           |
| sincere        | successful  | unusual              |
| single         | sum         | unworried            |
| sizeable       | super       | upbeat               |
| skillful       | superficial | upright              |
| skillful       | surprising  | upset, excited       |
| skillful       | sweet, nice | uptight              |
| slender        | tactful     | usual                |
| slight         | tactless    | valuable fashionable |
| slim           | talented    | valued               |
| slow           | talkative   | vast                 |
| sluggish       | tall        | very mean            |
| small          | teeny       | warm                 |
| smart          | thankful    | warm hearted         |
| smart-alecky   | thick       | weak                 |
| snooty         | thick       | well informed        |
| social         | thin        | well-behaved         |
| soft           | tiny        | well-dressed         |
| solid          | titanic     | well-informed        |
| some           | together    | well-known           |
| sour           | top secret  | wet                  |
| spacious       | total       | whole                |
| special        | totality    | wide                 |
| specialized    | touchy      | wide-ranging         |
| specific       | tremendous  | widespread           |
| spellbinding   | tricky      | wild                 |
| spiteful       | trivial     | with feeling         |
| spoiled (brat) | trustworthy | witty                |
| spontaneous    | ugly        | wonderful            |
| stingy         | unchanging  | wonderful            |
| strange        | unfriendly  | worry-free           |
| strange        | unimportant | wound                |
| strong         | uninhibited | wrong                |
| strong         | unique      | young                |
| stubborn       | universal   |                      |

## IRREGULAR VERBS

| Present | Past      | Past Participle |
|---------|-----------|-----------------|
| arise   | arose     | arisen          |
| awake   | awoke     | awoken          |
| be      | was, were | been            |
| bear    | bore      | borne           |
| beat    | beat      | beaten          |
| become  | became    | become          |

|        |                   |                      |
|--------|-------------------|----------------------|
| begin  | began             | begun                |
| bend   | bent              | bent                 |
| bet    | bet, betted       | bet- betted          |
| bind   | bound             | Bound                |
| bite   | bit               | Bitten               |
| bleed  | bled              | Bled                 |
| blow   | blew              | Blown                |
| break  | broke             | Broken               |
| breed  | bred              | Bred                 |
| bring  | brought           | Brought              |
| build  | built             | Built                |
| burn   | burnt, burned     | burnt, -burned       |
| burst  | burst             | Burst                |
| buy    | bought            | Bought               |
| can    | Could             | (no past participle) |
| cast   | cast              | Cast                 |
| catch  | caught            | Caught               |
| choose | chose             | Chosen               |
| cling  | clung             | Clung                |
| come   | came              | Come                 |
| cost   | cost              | Cost                 |
| creep  | crept             | Crept                |
| cut    | cut               | Cut                  |
| deal   | dealt             | Dealt                |
| dig    | dug               | Dug                  |
| do     | did               | Done                 |
| draw   | drew              | Drawn                |
| dream  | dreamed/ dreamt – | dreamed/ dreamt      |
| drink  | drank             | Drunk                |
| drive  | drove             | driven               |
| eat    | ate               | eaten                |
| fall   | fell              | fallen               |
| feed   | fed               | fed                  |
| feel   | felt              | felt                 |
| fight  | Fought            | fought               |
| find   | found             | found                |
| fly    | flew              | flown                |
| forbid | forbade           | forbidden            |

|          |                |                      |
|----------|----------------|----------------------|
| forecast | forecast       | forecast             |
| forego   | forewent       | foregone             |
| forget   | forgot         | forgotten            |
| forgive  | forgave        | forgiven             |
| freeze   | froze          | frozen               |
| get      | got            | gotten               |
| give     | gave           | given                |
| go       | went           | gone                 |
| grow     | grew           | grown                |
| hang     | hung, hanged   | hung, hanged         |
| have     | had            | had                  |
| hear     | heard          | heard                |
| hit      | hit            | hit                  |
| hold     | held           | held                 |
| hurt     | hurt           | hurt                 |
| keep     | kept           | kept                 |
| kneel    | knelt, kneeled | knelt /kneeled       |
| know     | knew           | known                |
| lay      | laid           | laid                 |
| lead     | led / has      | led                  |
| leave    | left           | left                 |
| let      | let            | let                  |
| lie      | lay            | lain                 |
| light    | lit, lighted   | lit, lighted         |
| lose     | lost           | lost                 |
| make     | made           | made                 |
| may      | might          | (no past participle) |
| mean     | meant          | meant                |
| meet     | met            | met                  |
| mistake  | mistook        | mistaken             |
| mow      | mowed          | mown, mowed          |
| pay      | paid           | paid                 |
| put      | put            | put                  |
| quit     | quit           | quit                 |
| read     | read           | read                 |
| rid      | rid            | rid                  |
| ride     | rode           | ridden               |
| ring     | rang           | rung                 |

|        |               |                      |
|--------|---------------|----------------------|
| rise   | rose          | risen                |
| run    | ran           | run                  |
| saw    | sawed         | sawn                 |
| say    | said          | said                 |
| see    | saw           | seen                 |
| seek   | sought        | sought               |
| sell   | sold          | sold                 |
| send   | sent          | sent                 |
| set    | set           | set                  |
| shake  | shook         | shaken               |
| shall  | should        | (no past participle) |
| shear  | sheared       | shorn, sheared       |
| shed   | shed          | shed                 |
| shine  | shone         | shone                |
| shoot  | shot          | shot                 |
| show   | showed        | shown                |
| shrink | shrank        | shrunk               |
| shut   | shut          | shut                 |
| sing   | sang          | sung                 |
| sink   | sank          | sunk                 |
| sit    | sat           | sat                  |
| slay   | slew          | slain                |
| sleep  | slept         | slept                |
| slink  | slunk         | slunk                |
| speak  | spoke         | spoken               |
| speed  | sped, speeded | sped, speeded        |
| spend  | spent         | spent                |
| spread | spread        | spread               |
| spring | sprang        | sprung               |
| stand  | stood         | stood                |
| steal  | stole         | stolen               |
| sting  | stung         | stung                |
| strike | struck        | struck, stricken     |
| swear  | swore         | sworn                |
| sweep  | swept         | swept                |
| swim   | swam          | swum                 |
| take   | took          | taken                |
| teach  | taught        | taught               |

|          |                   |                      |
|----------|-------------------|----------------------|
| tear     | tore              | torn                 |
| tell     | told              | told                 |
| think    | thought           | thought              |
| throw    | threw             | thrown               |
| upset    | upset / has upset |                      |
| wake     | woke              | woken                |
| wear     | wore              | worn                 |
| weave    | wove, weaved      | woven, weaved        |
| weep     | wept              | wept                 |
| wet      | wetted, wet /     | wetted, wet          |
| will     | would             | (no past participle) |
| win      | won               | has won              |
| withdraw | withdrew          | withdrawn            |
| write    | wrote             | written              |

## Contents

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| SUBJECT PRONOUNS - HE, SHE, IT, WE, THEY .....                    | 7         |
| PLURAL NOUN .....   | 8         |
| PLURAL NOUN .....   | 9         |
| A-AN.....   | 10        |
| TO BE PRESENT .....   | 11        |
| TO BE PRESENT am – is - are.....                                  | 11        |
| TO BE PRESENT - ISN'T, AREN'T.....                                | 12        |
| TO BE PRESENT AM, IS, ARE, AM NOT, ISN'T, AREN'T .....            | 13        |
| TO BE (Present) SINGULAR to PLURAL - QUESTIONS .....              | 14        |
| TO BE (Present) PLURAL to SINGULAR .....                          | 15        |
| TO BE (Present) PLURAL .....                                      | 16        |
| TO BE PRESENT .....   | 17        |
| TO BE PRESENT - Questions .....                                   | 17        |
| TO BE PRESENT - Questions .....                                   | 18        |
| TO BE PRESENT - WH Questions .....                                | 19        |
| <b>TO BE PAST .....</b>   | <b>20</b> |
| TO BE PAST (WAS, WERE) .....                                      | 21        |
| TO BE PAST – NEGATIVE (WASN'T, WEREN'T) .....                     | 21        |
| TO BE PAST - READING (was / wasn't / were / weren't).....         | 22        |
| TO BE PAST – QUESTION .....                                       | 23        |
| TO BE PAST – Asking Question and Answer .....                     | 24        |
| THERE IS - THERE ARE .....  | 25        |
| THERE IS – THERE ARE – QUESTION FORM .....                        | 26        |
| HAVE GOT-HAS GOT .....  | 28        |
| PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE .....                                   | 32        |
| (Affirmative/Positive Form) .....                                 | 32        |
| PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE (Question/Negative Form).....           | 33        |
| PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE (Question/Negative Form).....           | 34        |
| PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE (Question/Negative Form).....           | 35        |
| PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE .....                                   | 36        |
| (WH question form ) .....   | 36        |
| IMPLE PRESENT TENSE .....   | 37        |
| SPELLING and PRONOUNCIATION of –S , -ES, IES .....                | 38        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT – VERB –S,-ES .....                                | 39        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Third Person Singular).....                 | 40        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Third Person Singular).....                 | 41        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Adverbs of Frequency) .....                 | 43        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Adverbs of Frequency) .....                 | 44        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Adverbs of Frequency) .....                 | 45        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Negative Sentence) .....                    | 46        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Positive / Negative Sentence) .....         | 47        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Questions).....                             | 50        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (WH questions) .....                         | 51        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (WH questions) .....                         | 52        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (WH questions) .....                         | 54        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (WH questions) .....                         | 55        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE & PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE .....            | 56        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE vs. Present Progressive.....                 | 56        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Present Progressive to Simple Present)..... | 57        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE & PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE .....            | 58        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE & PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE .....            | 59        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE & PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE .....            | 60        |
| SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE & PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE .....            | 62        |
| <b>ADJECTIVES .....</b>   | <b>63</b> |
| ADJECTIVES - OPPOSITE .....                                       | 64        |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| OPPOSITES of the ADJECTIVES .....   | 65  |
| ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing (Vocabulary List).....                                   | 66  |
| ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing.....   | 67  |
| ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing.....   | 68  |
| ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing (WH questions).....                                      | 68  |
| ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS.....  | 70  |
| ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS.....  | 70  |
| ADJECTIVES - QUESTIONS .....  | 72  |
| ADJECTIVES and ADVERBS .....  | 73  |
| ADJECTIVES and ADVERBS .....  | 74  |
| ADJECTIVES and ADVERBS .....  | 75  |
| ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS.....  | 76  |
| ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing (WH questions).....                                      | 77  |
| Adjectives - (WH questions) .....   | 77  |
| COMPARATIVE & SUPERLATIVE .....   | 79  |
| COMPARATIVE - Adjective.....  | 81  |
| COMPARATIVE – (More) Adjectives.....  | 82  |
| COMPARATIVE (Adjective) – .....   | 83  |
| COMPARATIVE - ADVERBS.....  | 83  |
| COMPARATIVE – Adjectives - Adverbs .....  | 84  |
| SUPERLATIVE (Adjective) .....   | 85  |
| COMPARATIVE or SUPERLATIVE (Adjective) .....  | 86  |
| ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS.....  | 88  |
| QUESTIONS & SHORT ANSWERS .....   | 89  |
| SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Regular Verbs) - ed.....   | 90  |
| SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Regular Verbs – Question & Negative Forms) .....                     | 91  |
| SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Regular Verbs – From Simple Present Tense to Simple Past).....       | 92  |
| SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Irregular Verbs) .....   | 93  |
| SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Yes- No Question / Negative) .....                                   | 94  |
| SIMPLE PAST TENSE (WH Questions) .....  | 95  |
| SIMPLE PAST TENSE (WH Questions) .....  | 99  |
| SIMPLE PAST TENSE (WH Questions) .....  | 102 |
| PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE.....   | 104 |
| PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE .....  | 106 |
| (Affirmative – Positive Form) WHEN - WHILE .....  | 106 |
| PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE .....  | 106 |
| PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE .....  | 107 |
| PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Affirmative – Positive Form) .....          | 109 |
| PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST TENSE .....  | 111 |
| SIMPLE PRESENT – PRESENT PROGRESSIVE - PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST ....        | 114 |
| SIMPLE PRESENT – PRESENT PROGRESSIVE- PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST- FUTURE..... | 115 |
| PRESENT PERFECT TENSE .....   | 116 |
| PRESENT PERFECT .....   | 117 |
| PRESENT PERFECT .....   | 118 |
| PRESENT PERFECT - Have you ever...? .....   | 119 |
| PRESENT PERFECT - Have you ever...? .....   | 120 |
| PRESENT PERFECT - Have you ever...? .....   | 121 |
| PRESENT PERFECT (Positive- Negative – Question form) .....                              | 121 |
| PRESENT PERFECT – Yes/No -Questions .....   | 122 |
| YET - already .....   | 123 |
| <b>ALREADY:</b> .....   | 123 |
| ALREADY (Present Perfect) .....   | 123 |
| YET – (Present Perfect) - QUESTION FORM .....   | 124 |
| YET – (Present Perfect) - QUESTION FORM .....   | 125 |
| YET – ALREADY (Present Perfect).....  | 125 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| YET – ALREADY - Present Perfect .....                                     | 126 |
| PRESENT PERFECT – (Just) .....  | 128 |
| PRESENT PERFECT – (Since - For) .....                                     | 129 |
| PRESENT PERFECT – (Since - For) .....                                     | 130 |
| PRESENT PERFECT – (Since - For) .....                                     | 131 |
| PRESENT PERFECT – Just, Yet, Since, For .....                             | 132 |
| PRESENT PERFECT – How Long? .....   | 133 |
| PRESENT PERFECT – Wh -Questions .....                                     | 134 |
| PRESENT PERFECT - SIMPLE PAST TENSE .....                                 | 135 |
| PRESENT PERFECT - SIMPLE PAST TENSE .....                                 | 136 |
| PRESENT PERFECT – SIMPLE PAST .....                                       | 139 |
| PRESENT PERFECT – SIMPLE PAST .....                                       | 140 |
| PAST PERFECT TENSE .....  | 141 |
| PAST PERFECT TENSE .....  | 142 |
| SIMPLE PAST or PAST PERFECT TENSE? .....                                  | 143 |
| GOING TO FUTURE .....   | 147 |
| GOING TO FUTURE (question form) .....                                     | 148 |
| GOING TO FUTURE .....   | 149 |
| FUTURE TENSE – Will (Positive) .....                                      | 150 |
| FUTURE TENSE – Will (Negative/Questions) .....                            | 151 |
| GOING TO FUTURE & WILL .....  | 153 |
| WH QUESTIONS – How much /How many .....                                   | 156 |
| WH QUESTIONS – How much /How many .....                                   | 157 |
| WH QUESTIONS .....  | 158 |
| WH QUESTIONS (Information questions) .....                                | 159 |
| WH/INFORMATION QUESTIONS .....  | 161 |
| WH QUESTIONS – Answer / Question .....                                    | 162 |
| WH QUESTIONS – READING PASSAGE – .....                                    | 163 |
| Answer / Question .....   | 163 |
| WH QUESTIONS – READING PASSAGE .....                                      | 163 |
| Answer / Question .....   | 163 |
| WH QUESTIONS - Mixed .....  | 164 |
| TENSE REVISION .....  | 177 |
| TENSE REVISION .....  | 181 |
| POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES - MY, YOUR, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR - ..... | 188 |
| POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES .....   | 189 |
| MY, YOUR, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR - .....                         | 189 |
| OBJECT PRONOUNS (me, him, her, you, it, them, us) .....                   | 191 |
| OBJECT PRONOUNS (me, him, her, it, them, us) .....                        | 192 |
| POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS .....   | 193 |
| PRONOUNS and POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES .....                                  | 194 |
| MODALS .....  | 197 |
| MAY, COULD, CAN, (PERMISSION, REQUEST) .....                              | 198 |
| REQUESTS (Will – Would - Could) .....                                     | 199 |
| CAN I... , COULD I...? etc.(requests) .....                               | 200 |
| ASKING FOR PERMISSION & MAKING REQUESTS .....                             | 200 |
| CAN – CAN’T (Ability) .....   | 201 |
| CAN – Ability (Yes/No Questions) .....                                    | 202 |
| COULD – Past Ability .....  | 204 |
| COULD or WAS / WERE ABLE TO? .....  | 205 |
| COULDN’T .....  | 206 |
| HAVE TO / HAS TO / MUST (Necessity) .....                                 | 207 |
| HAVE TO / HAS TO / MUST .....   | 208 |
| HAD TO / WILL HAVE TO .....   | 209 |
| HAD TO / WILL HAVE TO .....   | 210 |
| HAVE TO / HAS TO / HAD TO - INFORMATION QUESTIONS .....                   | 211 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| MUST / MUSTN'T / NEEDN'T.....   | 212 |
| MAY (permission) .....  | 213 |
| MAY (Possibility).....  | 214 |
| MAY-MIGHT (Possibility).....  | 215 |
| USED TO .....   | 216 |
| USED TO (Question – Negative Answer) .....                              | 217 |
| USED TO (Wh-Yes/No questions).....                                      | 218 |
| USED TO .....   | 218 |
| SHALL I...? (Offer/Suggestion) .....                                    | 219 |
| WOULD LIKE .....  | 220 |
| SHOULD (Advice) .....   | 221 |
| SHOULD HAVE DONE.....   | 222 |
| OUGHT TO / OUGHTN'T TO.....   | 223 |
| HAD BETTER.....   | 224 |
| GIVING ADVICE .....   | 225 |
| INFINITIVE .....  | 226 |
| GERUND .....  | 228 |
| GERUND - Asking Questions.....  | 229 |
| GERUND - .....  | 230 |
| GERUND or INFINITIVE .....  | 231 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Simple Present) .....                                    | 235 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Present PROGRESSIVE) .....                               | 236 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Simple Past) .....                                       | 237 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Past Progressive).....                                   | 238 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Present Perfect - Past Perfect).....                     | 239 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Modals) .....  | 240 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Mix Type) (Active to Passive).....                       | 241 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Passive to Active) .....                                 | 242 |
| ACTIVE or PASSIVE?.....   | 243 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Mix Type).....   | 244 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Mix Type) .....  | 245 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Mix Type).....   | 246 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (...used for... / ...made in – of - from ...).....        | 248 |
| PASSIVE VOICE - WHO? .....  | 249 |
| PASSIVE VOICE (Who?) .....  | 249 |
| INDIRECT OBJECTS .....  | 250 |
| VERBS WITH TWO OBJECTS .....  | 250 |
| <b>RELATIVE CLAUSES</b> .....   | 252 |
| USING SUBJECT PRONOUNS: <i>WHO, WHICH, THAT</i> .....                   | 252 |
| PUNCTUATION OF ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.....                                   | 253 |
| RELATIVE CLAUSE (Who).....  | 254 |
| RELATIVE CLAUSES (Who, Which) .....                                     | 255 |
| RELATIVE CLAUSE (Who-Where, Which).....                                 | 255 |
| RELATIVE CLAUSE (Who, Which).....                                       | 257 |
| RELATIVE CLAUSES (Whose) .....  | 258 |
| RELATIVE CLAUSES (Mix Type).....  | 259 |
| RELATIVE CLAUSES (Mix Type).....  | 261 |
| RELATIVE CLAUSES.....   | 262 |
| <b>REPORTED SPEECH</b> .....  | 263 |
| REPORTED SPEECH AND THE FORMAL SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN NOUN CLAUSES ..... | 263 |
| REPORTED SPEECH (To be Present – Present Progressive).....              | 264 |
| REPORTED SPEECH (Present Perfect – Simple Past).....                    | 265 |
| REPORTED SPEECH (Modals – Future) .....                                 | 266 |
| REPORTED SPEECH (Imperatives).....                                      | 267 |
| REPORTED SPEECH (Simple Present).....                                   | 268 |
| REPORTED SPEECH (Mix Tenses).....                                       | 269 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| REPORTED SPEECH (Question -Mix Tenses) .....  | 270 |
| REPORTED SPEECH .....   | 271 |
| REPORTED SPEECH (Questions) .....   | 272 |
| REPORTED SPEECH (Mix Type) .....  | 274 |
| REPORTED SPEECH (Mix Type) .....  | 275 |
| REPORTED SPEECH .....   | 276 |
| REPORTED SPEECH (Mix Type) .....  | 276 |
| REPORTED SPEECH (Mix Type) .....  | 277 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1) .....  | 278 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1) Making Sentences .....                                     | 280 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1) if/when .....  | 282 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1) .....  | 283 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1) Make Sentences .....                                       | 283 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES .....   | 284 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) .....  | 285 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) .....  | 287 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) Asking Questions .....                                     | 288 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) Complete Sentences .....                                   | 289 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) Meaningful Sentences .....                                 | 289 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCE TYPE 1 – TYPE 2 .....  | 290 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 3) .....  | 291 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCE - TYPE 3 Asking Questions .....                                      | 294 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCE - TYPE 3 Making Sentence .....                                       | 295 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCE TYPE 1 – TYPE 2 – TYPE 3 .....                                       | 295 |
| CONDITIONAL SENTENCE TYPE 1 – TYPE 2 – TYPE 3 .....                                       | 298 |
| IF / WHEN CLAUSES .....   | 300 |
| WISH CLAUSE .....   | 301 |
| IF ONLY .....   | 301 |
| WISH CLAUSE .....   | 303 |
| WISH CLAUSE – Asking Questions .....  | 304 |
| WISH - IF ONLY .....  | 305 |
| WISH - IF ONLY .....  | 306 |
| WHAT IF....? .....  | 307 |
| WHAT IF....? Answer Questions .....   | 308 |
| CAUSATIVES ( <i>get</i> and <i>have</i> ) .....   | 308 |
| ADVERBIAL CLAUSES - UNLESS .....  | 309 |
| WITHOUT .....   | 310 |
| AFTER/BEFORE V+ING .....  | 311 |
| ADVERBIAL CLAUSES: UNLESS / WITHOUT / IF / BEFORE V+ING / AFTER V+ING / WHILE V+ING ..... | 311 |
| SO / NOR = NEITHER .....  | 312 |
| ...EITHER.... OR .....  | 312 |
| NEITHER ... NOR .....   | 313 |
| BOTH ... AND .....  | 314 |
| ...SO...THAT... / ...SUCH... THAT .....   | 315 |
| TOO – ENOUGH .....  | 316 |
| TOO / ENOUGH .....  | 317 |
| DETERMINERS - TOO MANY / TOO FEW / TOO MUCH / TOO LITTLE / ENOUGH .....                   | 318 |
| NOUN CLAUSES .....  | 319 |
| NOUN CLAUSES .....  | 321 |
| ARTICLES .....  | 324 |
| ARTICLES (a-an-the) .....   | 324 |
| ADJECTIVE .....   | 327 |
| IRREGULAR VERBS .....   | 330 |

# ALPHABETICAL LIST

## Contents

A-AN 10  
ACTIVE or PASSIVE? 243  
ADJECTIVE 327  
Adjectives - (WH questions) 77  
ADJECTIVES - OPPOSITE 64  
ADJECTIVES or ADVERBS 70, 76, 88  
ADJECTIVES - QUESTIONS 72  
ADJECTIVES and ADVERBS 73, 74, 75  
ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing (Vocabulary List) 66  
ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing (WH questions) 68, 77  
ADJECTIVES ENDING -ed AND -ing 67, 68  
ADJECTIVES 63  
AFTER V+ING 311  
AFTER/BEFORE V+ING 311  
ALREADY (Present Perfect) 123  
ALREADY: 123  
Answer / Question 163  
ARTICLES (a-an-the) 324  
ARTICLES 324  
ASKING FOR PERMISSION & MAKING REQUESTS 200  
BEFORE V+ING 311  
BOTH ... AND ... 314  
CAN – Ability (Yes/No Questions) 202  
CAN – CAN’T (Ability) 201  
CAN I..., COULD I...? etc.(requests) 200  
CAN, (PERMISSION, REQUEST) 198  
CAUSATIVES (get and have) 308  
COMPARATIVE (Adjective) – 83  
COMPARATIVE – (More) Adjectives 82  
COMPARATIVE - Adjective 81  
COMPARATIVE – Adjectives - Adverbs 84  
COMPARATIVE - ADVERBS 83  
COMPARATIVE & SUPERLATIVE 79  
COMPARATIVE or SUPERLATIVE (Adjective) 86  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCE - TYPE 3 Asking Questions 294  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCE - TYPE 3 Making Sentence 295  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCE TYPE 1 – TYPE 2 – TYPE 3 295  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCE TYPE 1 – TYPE 2 – TYPE 3 298  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCE TYPE 1 – TYPE 2 290  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1) if/when 282  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1) Making Sentences 280, 283  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 1) 278, 283  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) Meaningful Sentences 289  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) Asking Questions 288  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) Complete Sentences 289  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Type 2) 285, 287, 291  
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES 284  
COULD – Past Ability 204  
COULD 205, 198  
COULDN’T 206  
EITHER.... OR... 312  
FUTURE TENSE – Will (Positive) 150  
FUTURE TENSE – Will (Negative/Questions) 151

GERUND - Asking Questions 229  
GERUND -228. 230  
GERUND or INFINITIVE 231  
GIVING ADVICE 225  
GOING TO FUTURE & WILL 153  
GOING TO FUTURE (question form) 148  
GOING TO FUTURE 147, 149  
HAD BETTER 224  
HAD TO / WILL HAVE TO 209, 210  
HAVE GOT-HAS GOT 28  
HAVE TO / HAS TO / HAD TO - INFORMATION QUESTIONS 211  
HAVE TO / HAS TO / MUST (Necessity) 207  
HAVE TO / HAS TO / MUST 208  
How much /How many 156, 157  
IF / WHEN CLAUSES 300  
IF 311  
IF ONLY 301  
IMPLE PRESENT TENSE 37  
INDIRECT OBJECTS 250  
INFINITIVE 226  
IRREGULAR VERBS 330  
MAY (permission) 213  
MAY (Possibility) 214  
MAY198  
MAY-MIGHT (Possibility) 215  
MODALS 197  
MUST / MUSTN'T / NEEDN'T 212  
MUST 207  
MY, YOUR, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR - 189  
NEITHER ... NOR.... 313  
NOUN CLAUSES 319, 321  
OBJECT PRONOUNS (me, him, her, it, them, us) 192  
OBJECT PRONOUNS (me, him, her, you, it, them, us) 191  
OPPOSITES of the ADJECTIVES 65  
OUGHT TO / OUGHTN'T TO 223  
PASSIVE VOICE - WHO? 249  
PASSIVE VOICE (Mix Type) 244, 246  
PASSIVE VOICE (Mix Type) (Active to Passive) 241  
PASSIVE VOICE (Passive to Active) 242  
PASSIVE VOICE (Mix Type) 245  
PASSIVE VOICE (Modals) 240  
PASSIVE VOICE (Who?) 249  
PASSIVE VOICE (...used for... / ...made in – of - from...) 248  
PASSIVE VOICE (Present Perfect - Past Perfect) 239  
PASSIVE VOICE (Present PROGRESSIVE) 236  
PASSIVE VOICE (Simple Past) 237  
PASSIVE VOICE (Simple Present) 235  
PASSIVE VOICE (Past Progressive) 238  
PAST PERFECT TENSE 141, 142  
PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST TENSE 111  
PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Affirmative – Positive Form) 109  
PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE 104, 106, 107  
PLURAL NOUN 8, 9  
POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES - MY, YOUR, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR - 188  
POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES 189  
POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS 193

PRESENT PERFECT - Have you ever...? 119, 120, 121  
PRESENT PERFECT (Positive- Negative – Question form) 121  
PRESENT PERFECT – How Long? 133  
PRESENT PERFECT – Just, Yet, Since, For 132  
PRESENT PERFECT – Wh -Questions 134  
PRESENT PERFECT – Yes/No -Questions 122  
PRESENT PERFECT – (Just) 128  
PRESENT PERFECT – (Since - For) 129, 130, 131  
PRESENT PERFECT - SIMPLE PAST TENSE 135, 136, 139, 140  
PRESENT PERFECT TENSE 116  
PRESENT PERFECT 117, 118  
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE (Question/Negative Form) 33, 33, 34  
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE 32, 36  
PRONOUNS and POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES 194  
PUNCTUATION OF ADJECTIVE CLAUSES 253  
QUESTIONS & SHORT ANSWERS 89  
RELATIVE CLAUSE (Who) 254  
RELATIVE CLAUSE (Who, Which) 257  
RELATIVE CLAUSE (Who-Where, Which) 255  
RELATIVE CLAUSES (Mix Type) 259  
RELATIVE CLAUSES (Mix Type) 261  
RELATIVE CLAUSES (Who, Which) 255  
RELATIVE CLAUSES (Whose) 258  
RELATIVE CLAUSES 252, 262  
REPORTED SPEECH (Simple Present) 268  
REPORTED SPEECH (Imperatives) 267  
REPORTED SPEECH (Mix Tenses) 269, 274, 275, 276, 277  
REPORTED SPEECH (Modals – Future) 266  
REPORTED SPEECH (Present Perfect – Simple Past) 265  
REPORTED SPEECH (Question -Mix Tenses) 270  
REPORTED SPEECH (Questions) 272  
REPORTED SPEECH (To be Present – Present Progressive) 264  
REPORTED SPEECH AND THE FORMAL SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN NOUN CLAUSES 263  
REPORTED SPEECH 263, 271, 276  
REQUESTS (Will – Would - Could) 199  
SHALL I...? (Offer/Suggestion) 219  
SHOULD (Advice) 221  
SHOULD HAVE DONE 222  
SIMPLE PAST or PAST PERFECT TENSE? 143  
SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Yes- No Question / Negative) 94  
SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Irregular Verbs) 93  
SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Regular Verbs – From Simple Present Tense to Simple Past) 92  
SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Regular Verbs – Question & Negative Forms) 91  
SIMPLE PAST TENSE (Regular Verbs) - ed 90  
SIMPLE PAST TENSE (WH Questions) 102, 95, 99  
SIMPLE PRESENT – PRESENT PROGRESSIVE - PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST 114  
SIMPLE PRESENT – PRESENT PROGRESSIVE- PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE - SIMPLE PAST- FUTURE 115  
SIMPLE PRESENT – VERB -S,-ES 39  
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Third Person Singular) 40  
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE & PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE 56, 58, 59, 60, 62  
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Adverbs of Frequency) 43  
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (WH questions) 51, 52, 55  
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE vs. Present Progressive 56  
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Adverbs of Frequency) 44, 45  
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Negative Sentence) 46

SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Positive / Negative Sentence) 47  
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Present Progressive to Simple Present) 57  
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Questions) 50  
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (Third Person Singular) 41  
SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (WH questions) 54  
SO / NOR = NEITHER 312  
SO...THAT... / ...SUCH... THAT... 315  
SPELLING and PRONUNCIATION of -S, -ES, IES 38  
SUBJECT PRONOUNS - HE, SHE, IT, WE, THEY 7  
SUPERLATIVE (Adjective) 85  
TENSE REVISION 177, 181  
THERE IS – THERE ARE – QUESTION FORM 26  
THERE IS – THERE ARE 25  
TO BE (Present) PLURAL to SINGULAR 15  
TO BE (Present) PLURAL 16  
TO BE (Present) SINGULAR to PLURAL - QUESTIONS 14  
TO BE PAST (WAS, WERE) 21  
TO BE PAST – Asking Question and Answer 24  
TO BE PAST – NEGATIVE (WASN'T, WEREN'T) 21  
TO BE PAST – QUESTION 23  
TO BE PAST - READING (was / wasn't / were / weren't) 22  
TO BE PAST 20  
TO BE PRESENT - ISN'T, AREN'T 12  
TO BE PRESENT - Questions 17, 18  
TO BE PRESENT - WH Questions 19  
TO BE PRESENT am – is - are 11  
TO BE PRESENT AM, IS, ARE, AM NOT, ISN'T, AREN'T 13  
TO BE PRESENT 11, 17  
TOO – ENOUGH 316, 317  
TOO FEW 318  
TOO LITTLE / ENOUGH 318  
TOO MANY 318  
TOO MUCH 318  
UNLESS 309, 311  
USED TO (Question – Negative Answer) 217, 218, 219  
USING SUBJECT PRONOUNS: WHO, WHICH, THAT 252  
VERBS WITH TWO OBJECTS 250  
WAS / WERE ABLE TO 205  
WH QUESTIONS – Answer / Question 162  
WH QUESTIONS – READING PASSAGE – 163  
WH QUESTIONS - Mixed 164  
WH QUESTIONS (Information questions) 159  
WH QUESTIONS 158  
WH/INFORMATION QUESTIONS 161  
WHAT IF....? Answer Questions 308  
WHAT IF....? 307  
WHEN - WHILE 106  
WHILE V+ING 311  
WISH CLAUSE – Asking Questions 304  
WISH CLAUSE 301, 303  
WISH - IF ONLY 305  
WISH - IF ONLY 306  
WITHOUT 310, 311  
WOULD LIKE 220  
YET – (Present Perfect) - QUESTION FORM 124, 125  
YET – ALREADY - Present Perfect 126, 126, 123